Galatians

translationNotes

v8

Copyrights & Licensing

Version: 8

Published: 2017-07-05

Table of Contents

translationNotes

Introduction to Galatians

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Galatians

1. Paul declares his authority as an apostle of Jesus Christ; he says that he is surprised by the false teachings that the Christians in Galatia have accepted from other people (1:1-10).
2. Paul says that people are saved by trusting in Christ alone, not by keeping the law (1:11-2:21).
3. God puts people right with himself only when they trust in Christ; the example of Abraham; the curse which the law brings (and not a means of salvation); slavery and freedom compared and illustrated by Hagar and Sarah (3:1-4:31).
4. When people are joined to Christ, they become free from having to keep the law of Moses. They are also free to live as the Holy Spirit guides them. They are free to refuse the demands of sin. They are free to bear each other's burdens (5:1-6:10).
5. Paul warns the Christians not to trust in being circumcised and in keeping the law of Moses. Instead, they must trust in Christ (6:11-18).

What is the Book of Galatians about?

Paul wrote this letter to both Jewish and non-Jewish Christians in the region of Galatia. He wanted to write against the false teaching that said that Christians need to follow the law of Moses. Paul defended the gospel by explaining that salvation is through faith in Jesus Christ. It is a result of the kindness of God and not a result of people doing good works. Any attempt to please God by obeying the law of Moses will bring condemnation by God. (See: good news, gospel, save, saves, saved, safe, faith, law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh and works, deeds, work, acts)

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "Galatians," or "Paul's Letter to the Church in Galatia." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What does it mean to "live like Jews" (2:14)?

To "live like Jews" means to follow the law of Moses, even though one trusts in Christ. The people among the early Christians who taught that this was necessary were called "Judaizers."

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

How does Paul use the terms "law" and "grace" in the Book of Galatians?

These terms are used in a relatively unique way in Galatians. There is an important teaching in Galatians about Christian living. Under the law of Moses, righteous or holy living required a person to follow a set of rules and regulations. As Christians, holy living is now motivated by grace. This means that Christians have freedom in Christ and are not required to follow a specific set of rules. Instead, Christians are to live a holy life out of thankfulness for the grace God has shown. This is called "the law of Christ." (See: righteous, righteousness and holy, holiness)

What does Paul mean by the expression "in Christ," "in the Lord," etc.?

This kind of expression occurs in 1:22; 2:4, 17; 3:14, 26, 28; 5:6, 10. Paul means in general to express the idea of very close union with Christ and the believers. At the same time, he often intends to signal other kinds of relationships. See, for example, "when we seek for God to justify us in Christ" (2:17), where Paul speaks of justification by means of Christ.

Please see the introduction to the Book of Romans for more details about this kind of expression.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Galatians?

The following passage is the most significant textual issue in the Book of Galatians:

- "Foolish Galatians, whose evil eye has harmed you? Was not Jesus Christ depicted as crucified before your eyes?" (3:1) The ULB, UDB, and the other modern versions have this reading. However, the King James version adds, "[so] that ye should not obey the truth." Translators are advised not to include this expression, because it was probably not original to the Book of Galatians.

(See: Textual Variants)

Galatians 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The introduction to this letter is slightly different than Paul's other letters. It states, "I am not an apostle from men nor through a man, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead." This statement is probably included because there were false teachers who opposed Paul and tried to undermine his authority.

Special concepts in this chapter

Heresy

There is only one gospel that is capable of saving a person eternally. This is the true, biblical gospel, any other version of the gospel is under condemnation from God. Those who teach a false gospel are considered accursed and it is possible that they are outside of salvation. They should be treated as non-Christians. (See: save, saves, saved, safe, everlasting, eternal, eternity, good news, gospel, condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation and curse, cursed, curses, cursing)

Paul's qualifications

There was an issue in the early church whereby certain people taught that Gentiles needed to obey the law of Moses. In this chapter, Paul gives his credentials or qualifications as an "exemplary" Jew in order to refute this teaching (1:11-24). As a Jew, and the apostle to the Gentile people, Paul is uniquely qualified to address this issue. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"You are turning so quickly to a different gospel"

Galatians was probably the first letter Paul wrote, making this line one of the first recorded statements about the early church. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Links:

- **Galatians 01:01 Notes**
- **Galatians intro**

Galatians 1:1

UDB:

1-2 I, Paul, am writing to my dear brothers and sisters in the province of Galatia. I am Paul, the apostle. No group of people made me an apostle, and God did not tell anybody to make me one. Instead, I am an apostle because Jesus Christ and God the Father have sent me as one—yes, God the Father, who made Christ live again after he had died! I and all the fellow believers who are here with me greet you all in the churches in the province of Galatia.

ULB:

1 Paul, an apostle—not an apostle from men nor by human agency, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father, who raised him from the dead ones— **2** and all the brothers with me, to the churches of Galatia:

translationNotes

General Information:

Paul, an apostle, writes this letter to the churches in the area of Galatia.

General Information:

Unless noted otherwise, all instances of "you" and "your" in this letter refer to the Galatians and are plural. (See: Forms of You)

who raised him

"who raised Jesus Christ"

raised

Here this means to cause a dead person to become alive again.

brothers

Here this means fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father. AT: "brothers and sisters" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

translationWords

- Paul, Saul
- apostle, apostles, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- brother, brothers
- church, churches, Church
- Galatia

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:3-5

UDB:

3 I pray that God, our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ will kindly help you and give you peace.
4 Christ sacrificed himself to God for our sins, in order to take us away from this world in which
people act in such evil ways. He did this because God, our Father, wanted him to. **5** Because that is
true, let us now praise God forever and ever.

ULB:

3 Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, **4** who gave himself for
our sins so that he might deliver us from this present evil age, according to the will of our God and
Father, **5** to him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

translationNotes

for our sins

"Sins" represents the punishment for sin. AT: "to take the punishment we deserved because of our
sins" (See: Metonymy)

that he might deliver us from this present evil age

Here "this … age" represents the powers at work in the age. AT: "that he might set us free from the
evil powers at work in the world today" (See: Metonymy)

our God and Father

This refers to "God our Father." He is our God and our Father.

translationWords

- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- will of God
- glory, glorious

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:6-7

UDB:

⁶ As you know, Christ called you in his kindness to trust in him. But now I am amazed that you have stopped trusting in him! Now you believe a different message, which some people say is the true good news about God. ⁷ Christ never told us another good news, but other people are confusing you. They want to change the good news about Christ; they want you to believe that Christ actually said something different.

ULB:

⁶ I am amazed that you are turning away so quickly from him who called you by the grace of Christ. I am amazed that you are turning to a different gospel. ⁷ This is not to say that there is another gospel, but there are some men who cause you trouble and want to change the gospel of Christ.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul gives his reason for writing this letter: he reminds them to continue to understand the gospel.

I am amazed

"I am surprised" or "I am shocked." Paul was disappointed that they were doing this.

you are turning away so quickly from him … to a different gospel

Possible meanings are 1) "you have so quickly stopped trusting in him" or 2) "you have so quickly stopped being loyal to him" (See: Metaphor)

him who called you

"God, who called you"

called

Here this means God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to serve him, and to proclaim his message of salvation through Jesus.

by the grace of Christ

"because of Christ's grace" or "because of Christ's gracious sacrifice"

you are turning to a different gospel

"you are believing a different gospel"

men

"people"

translationWords

- marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished
- call, calls, calling, called
- grace, gracious
- Christ, Messiah
- good news, gospel

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:8-10

UDB:

8 But even if we apostles or an angel from heaven should tell you a good news that is not the same as what we told you before, God should punish that person forever. **9** As we have already told you, so now I say to you again that someone is telling you a form of the good news that he says is good, but it is not the same as what you believed. So I ask God that he condemn that person forever. **10** I do not need people to like me, because it is God who approves of me. I am not trying to please people. If I were still trying to please people, then I would not really be serving Christ.

ULB:

8 But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim to you a gospel other than the one we proclaimed to you, let him be cursed. **9** As we have said before, so now I say again, "If someone proclaims to you a gospel other than the one you received, let him be cursed." **10** For am I now seeking the approval of men or God? Am I seeking to please men? If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ.

translationNotes

should proclaim

This is describing something that has not happened and should not happen. AT: "would proclaim" or "were to proclaim" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

other than the one

"different from the gospel" or "different from the message"

let him be cursed

"God should punish that person forever." If your language has a common way of calling a curse down on someone, you should use that.

For am I now seeking the approval of men or God? Am I seeking to please men?

These rhetorical questions expect the answer "no." AT: "I do not seek the approval of men, but instead I seek the approval of God. I am not seeking to please men." (See: Rhetorical Question)

If I am still trying to please men, I am not a servant of Christ

Both the "if" phrase and the "then" phrase are contrary to fact. "I am not still trying to please men; I am a servant of Christ" or "If I were still trying to please men, then I would not be a servant of Christ"

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- God
- servant, slave, slavery
- Christ, Messiah

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:11-12

UDB:

11 My fellow believers, I want you to know that the message about Christ that I proclaim to people is not one that some person created. **12** I did not learn this good news from any ordinary human being, and no such person taught it to me. Instead, it was Jesus Christ himself who taught me.

ULB:

11 For I want you to know, brothers, that the gospel I proclaimed is not man's gospel. **12** I did not receive it from any man, nor was I taught it. Instead, it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul explains that he did not learn the gospel from others; he learned it from Jesus Christ.

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

not man's gospel

By using this phrase, Paul was not trying to say that Jesus Christ is not himself human. Because Christ is both man and God, however, he is not a sinful human being. Paul is writing about where the gospel came from; that it did not come from other sinful human beings, but it came from Jesus Christ.

it was by revelation of Jesus Christ to me

Possible meanings are 1) "Jesus Christ himself revealed the gospel to me" or 2) "God made me know the gospel when he showed me who Jesus Christ was."

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- good news, gospel
- proclaim, proclamation
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- Christ, Messiah

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:13-14

UDB:

13 People have told you about what I did in the past when I worshiped God in the Jewish way. I never stopped doing the worst things to the groups of believers that God had established. I tried to destroy those believers and their groups. **14** I honored God in the Jewish way more thoroughly than any other Jew my own age. I was very angry when I saw other Jews neglecting to obey the traditions that our ancestors had kept.

ULB:

13 You have heard about my former life in Judaism, how I was persecuting the church of God beyond measure and that I was trying to destroy it. **14** I advanced in Judaism beyond many of those who were my own age, from out of my own people. That is how extremely zealous I was for the traditions of my fathers.

translationNotes

former life

"behavior at one time" or "prior life" or "earlier life"

I advanced

This metaphor pictures Paul as being ahead of other Jews his age in their goal to be perfect Jews.

those who were my own age

"the Jewish people who are the same age as I am"

fathers

"ancestors"

translationWords

- Judaism, Jewish religion
- persecute, persecution
- church, churches, Church
- zeal, zealous
- tradition

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:15-17

UDB:

15 However, I was still in my mother's womb when God chose me to serve him, and he did this because it pleased him to do so. **16** He showed me that Jesus is his Son; he did this so that I would tell others the good news about his Son in regions where the non-Jews live. But I did not immediately go to any mere humans in order to understand that message better. **17** And I did not immediately leave Damascus and go to Jerusalem to see the apostles there, the men who had become apostles before I became one. Instead, I went away into the region of Arabia, a region of wilderness. Later I returned once more to the city of Damascus.

ULB:

15 But when God, who had set me apart from my mother's womb, and who called me through his grace, **16** was pleased to reveal his Son in me, so that I would proclaim him among the Gentiles, I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. **17** I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus.

translationNotes

who called me through his grace

Possible meanings are 1) "God called me to serve him because he is gracious" or 2) "He called me by means of his grace."

to reveal his Son in me

Possible meanings are 1) "to allow me to know his Son" or 2) "to show the world through me that Jesus is God's Son."

Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

proclaim him

"proclaim that he is God's Son" or "preach the good news about God's Son"

consult with flesh and blood

This is an expression that means talking with other people. AT: "ask people to help me understand the message" (See: Idiom)

go up to Jerusalem

"go to Jerusalem." Jerusalem was in a region of high hills, making it necessary to climb many hills in order to get there, and so it was common to describe travel to Jerusalem as "going up to Jerusalem."

translationWords

- God
- call, calls, calling, called
- grace, gracious
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- proclaim, proclamation
- Gentile, Gentiles
- flesh
- blood
- Jerusalem
- apostle, apostles, apostleship
- Arabia, Arabian
- Damascus

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:18-20

UDB:

18 It was actually three years after God revealed this good news to me that I went up to Jerusalem to visit Peter. I stayed with him for fifteen days. **19** I also saw James, the half-brother of our Lord Jesus and the leader of the believers in Jerusalem, but I did not see any other apostle. **20** God knows that what I am writing to you is completely true!

ULB:

18 Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to get to know Cephas and I stayed with him fifteen days. **19** But I saw none of the other apostles except James, the Lord's brother. **20** In what I write to you, I assure you before God, that I am not lying.

translationNotes

I saw none of the other apostles except James

This double negative emphasizes that James was the only apostle whom Paul saw. AT: "the only other apostle I saw was James" (See: Double Negatives)

before God

Paul wants the Galatians to understand that Paul is completely serious and that he knows that God hears what he says and will judge him if he does not tell the truth.

In what I write to you, I assure you before God, that I am not lying

Paul uses litotes to emphasize that he is telling the truth. AT: "I am not lying to you in the messages I write to you" or "in the things I write to you I am telling you the truth" (See: Litotes)

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- apostle, apostles, apostleship
- James (brother of Jesus)
- Lord
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 1:21-24

UDB:

21 After I left Jerusalem, I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia. **22** At that time believers in the Christian congregations who were in the province of Judea still had never seen me. **23** They only heard others keep saying, "Paul, the one who in the past was doing violent things to us, is now proclaiming the same good news that we believe and he had been trying to stop!" **24** So they kept praising God because of what had happened to me.

ULB:

21 Then I went to the regions of Syria and Cilicia. **22** I was still not personally known to the churches of Judea that are in Christ. **23** They only heard it being said, "The man who once persecuted us is now proclaiming the faith he once tried to destroy." **24** So they glorified God because of me.

translationNotes

regions of

"part of the world called"

They only heard it being said

"but they only knew what they heard others saying about me"

I was still not personally known to the churches of Judea that are in Christ

"None of the people in the churches of Judea that are in Christ had ever met me"

translationWords

- Syria
- Cilicia
- church, churches, Church
- Judea
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- persecute, persecution
- proclaim, proclamation
- faith
- glorify, glorifies

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1 translationQuestions

Galatians 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the discussion of Paul's qualifications that began in Galatians 1:11.

Special concepts in this chapter

Freedom and slavery

These two concepts are used in contrast to each other. The Christian has freedom in Christ to be able to do many different things, but the Christian who attempts to follow the law of Moses, even one point, is under obligation to follow the whole of the law. This attempt to follow the law enslaves the Christians to have to follow it all. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"I do not negate the grace of God"

Paul teaches that, if a Christian attempts to follow the law of Moses, they fail to understand the grace God has shown to them. This is a fundamental error, but Paul uses this statement as a type of hypothetical situation. The purpose of this statement could be seen as, "if you could be saved by following the law, then it would negate the grace of God." (See: grace, gracious and Hypothetical Situations)

Links:

- **Galatians 02:01 Notes**

Galatians 2:1-2

UDB:

1 After fourteen years passed, Barnabas, Titus, and I went up again to Jerusalem. **2** We did this because God had told me we should go. I explained privately to the most important leaders of the believers the content of the good news that I had been proclaiming in the regions of the non-Jews. I did this because I wanted to make sure that they approved of what I had been preaching. I wanted to make sure that I had not been working uselessly.

ULB:

1 Then after fourteen years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, taking Titus along with me. **2** I went up because of a revelation and set before them the gospel that I proclaim among the Gentiles. I spoke privately to those who seemed to be important, in order to make sure that I was not running—or had not run—in vain.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to give the history of how he learned the gospel from God, not the apostles.

went up

"traveled." Jerusalem is located in hilly country. The Jews also viewed Jerusalem as the place on earth that is closest to heaven, so Paul may have been speaking figuratively, or it may be that it was reflecting the difficult, uphill, journey to get to Jerusalem.

those who seemed to be important

"the most important leaders among the believers"

I was not running—or had not run—in vain

Paul uses running as a metaphor for work, and he uses a double negative to emphasize that the work he had done was profitable. AT: "I was doing, or had done, profitable work" (See: Double Negatives and Metaphor)

in vain

"for no benefit" or "for nothing"

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- Barnabas
- Titus
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- good news, gospel
- proclaim, proclamation
- Gentile, Gentiles
- run, running

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:3-5

UDB:

3 But those leaders did not even require Titus, who was with me and was an uncircumcised Gentile, to be circumcised. **4** The people who would have required him to be circumcised were not true believers, but they pretended that they were fellow believers. They watched us closely to see how we obey God without following all the Jewish laws and rituals, since we know that Christ Jesus has freed us from those things. These false believers would like to make us like slaves to the law. **5** But not even briefly did we agree with them about circumcision. We resisted them in order that the true good news about Christ might continue to benefit you.

ULB:

3 But not even Titus, who was with me and who was a Greek, was forced to be circumcised. **4** The false brothers came in secretly to spy on the liberty we have in Christ Jesus. They desired to make us slaves, **5** but we did not yield in submission to them for a moment, so that the truth of the gospel would remain with you.

translationNotes

to be circumcised

This can be stated in active form. AT: "to have someone circumcise him" (See: Active or Passive)

The false brothers came in secretly

"People who pretended to be Christians came into the church," or "People who pretended to be Christians came among us"

spy on the liberty

secretly watch people to see how they live in liberty

liberty

freedom

They desired

"These spies desired" or "These false brothers wanted"

to make us slaves

"to make us slaves to the law." Paul is speaking about being forced to follow the Jewish rituals that the law commanded. He is speaking about this as if it were slavery. The most important ritual was circumcision. AT: "to force us to obey the law" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

yield in submission

"submit" or "listen"

translationWords

- Titus
- Greek, Grecian
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- servant, slave, slavery

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:6-8

UDB:

⁶ But those who others said were the leaders did not add anything to what I proclaim. Those leaders are important men, but they do not matter to me, because God does not favor certain persons more than others. **⁷** Instead, the leaders understood that God was trusting me to proclaim the good news to the non-Jews, just as Peter was proclaiming the good news to the Jews. **⁸** That is, just as God had empowered Peter to go as an apostle to take God's message to the Jews, he also empowered me to go as an apostle to take his message to the non-Jews.

ULB:

⁶ But those who seemed to be important (whatever they were does not matter to me, God shows no partiality)—those, I say, who seemed important added nothing to me. **⁷** On the contrary, they saw that I had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are uncircumcised, just as Peter had been entrusted with the gospel to those who are circumcised. **⁸** For God, who worked in Peter for the apostleship to those who are circumcised, also worked in me to the Gentiles.

translationNotes

added nothing to me

The word "me" here represents what Paul was teaching. AT: "added nothing to what I teach" or "did not tell me to add anything to what I teach" (See: Metonymy)

On the contrary

"Instead" or "Rather"

I had been entrusted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God trusted me" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- Gentile, Gentiles
- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- apostle, apostles, apostleship

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:9-10

UDB:

9 Those leaders understood that God had kindly given to me this special mission. So James, Peter, and John, the leaders of the believers in Christ, leaders who many people knew and honored, shook hands with us because we were fellow workers with them. We agreed that God had sent us to the non-Jews, who were not circumcised, and that God had sent them to Jews, who were circumcised. **10** They only urged us to still remember to help the poor among the fellow believers who live in Jerusalem. That is exactly what I have been eager to do.

ULB:

9 When James, Cephas, and John, who were recognized as those who built up the church, understood the grace that had been given to me, they gave the right hand of fellowship to Barnabas and me. They did this so that we should go to the Gentiles, and so that they should go to those who are circumcised. **10** They requested only that we remember the poor, the very thing that I was eager to do.

translationNotes

built up the church

They were men who taught people about Jesus and convinced people to believe in Jesus. (See: Metaphor)

understood the grace that had been given to me

The abstract noun "grace" can be translated as the verb "be kind." AT: "understood that God had been kind to me" (See: Abstract Nouns)

the grace that had been given to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the grace that God had given to me" (See: Active or Passive)

gave ... the right hand of fellowship

Grasping and shaking the right hand was a symbol of fellowship. AT: "welcomed ... as fellow workers" or "welcomed ... with honor" (See: Symbolic Action)

the right hand

"their right hands"

remember the poor

You may need to make explicit what about the poor he was to remember. AT: "remember to take care of the needs of the poor" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- James (brother of Jesus)
- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- John (the apostle)
- grace, gracious
- right hand
- Barnabas
- Gentile, Gentiles
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- Jew, Jewish, Jews

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:11-12

UDB:

11 But later while I was in the city of Antioch, after Peter came there, I looked into his eyes and told him that what he was doing was wrong. **12** This is what happened. Peter went to Antioch and started eating regularly with non-Jewish believers there. Later there were certain Jewish believers who came to Antioch who claimed that James, the leader of the believers in Jerusalem, had sent them. And when those men came, Peter stopped eating with the non-Jewish believers and would not associate with them. He was afraid that the Jewish believers from Jerusalem would criticize him for associating with non-Jews.

ULB:

11 But when Cephas came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face because he was declared to be in the wrong. **12** Before certain men came from James, Cephas was eating with the Gentiles. But when these men came, he stopped and kept away from the Gentiles. He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision.

translationNotes

I opposed him to his face

The words "to his face" are a metonym for "where he could see and hear me." AT: "I confronted him in person" or "I challenged his actions in person" (See: Metonymy)

Before

in relation to time

he stopped

"he stopped eating with them"

He was afraid of those who were demanding circumcision

The reason Cephas was afraid can be stated explicitly. AT: "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would judge that he was doing something wrong" or "He was afraid that these men who required circumcision would blame him for doing something wrong" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

those who were demanding circumcision

Jews who had become Christians, but who demanded that those who believe in Christ live according to Jewish customs

kept away from

"stayed away from" or "avoided"

translationWords

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- Antioch
- James (brother of Jesus)
- Gentile, Gentiles
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:13-14

UDB:

13 Also, the other Jewish believers in Antioch joined in Peter's hypocrisy by separating themselves from the non-Jewish believers. Even Barnabas thought he had to stop associating with the non-Jews! **14** But when I realized that they were not following the truth of the good news about Christ, and when all the fellow believers had come together, I said to Peter in front of them all, "You are Jewish, but you have been living like a non-Jew who does not follow the law. So how can you possibly persuade the non-Jews to live like Jews?"

ULB:

13 Also the rest of the Jews joined in this hypocrisy. Even Barnabas was led astray with them by their hypocrisy. **14** But when I saw that their behavior was not following the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in front of all of them, "If you are a Jew but are living like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?"

translationNotes

not following the truth of the gospel

"they were not living like people who believe the gospel" or "they were living as though they did not believe the gospel"

how can you force the Gentiles to live like Jews?

This rhetorical question is a rebuke and can be translated as a statement. The word "you" is singular and refers to Peter. AT: "you are wrong to force the Gentiles to live like Jews." (See: Rhetorical Question and Forms of You)

force

Possible meanings are 1) force by using words or 2) persuade .

translationWords

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy
- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- Barnabas
- good news, gospel
- Gentile, Gentiles

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:15-16

UDB:

15 We were born as Jews, not as non-Jewish sinners who know nothing about God's law. **16** But we now know that it is not because a person obeys the law that God gave to Moses that God makes a person right in his sight. God does that only if that person trusts in Jesus Christ. Even some of us Jews have trusted Christ Jesus. We did that so God would declare us good in his sight, because we trust Christ, and not because we try to obey the law that God gave to Moses. God has said that he will not declare anyone good in his sight just because they obey the law.

ULB:

15 We ourselves are Jews by birth and not Gentile sinners; **16** yet we know that no person is justified by the works of the law but through faith in Christ Jesus. We also came to faith in Christ Jesus so that we might be justified by faith in Christ and not by the works of the law. For by the works of the law no flesh will be justified.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers that Jews who know the law, as well as Gentiles who do not know the law, are saved only by faith in Christ and not by keeping the law.

not Gentile sinners

"not those whom the Jews call Gentile sinners"

We also came to faith in Christ Jesus

"We believed in Christ Jesus"

we

This probably refers to Paul and others but not to the Galatians, who were primarily Gentiles. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive "We")

no flesh

The word "flesh" is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: "no person" (See: Synecdoche)

translationWords

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Gentile, Gentiles
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- justify, justification
- works, deeds, work, acts
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:17-19

UDB:

17 But when we asked God to make us right in his sight by trusting in Christ, we stopped trying to obey the law, so the law proved us to be sinners for doing that. But this certainly does not mean that Christ is in favor of sin. Certainly not!

18 If I again believed that God would make me right in his sight because I obey his law, I would be like a man who rebuilds a shaky old building that he had once torn down. Everyone would see that I was breaking God's law. **19** As I was trying to obey God's law, I became like a dead man; it was as if the law had killed me. This happened so that I might live to worship God.

ULB:

17 But if, while we seek to be justified in Christ, we too, were found to be sinners, does Christ then promote sin? Absolutely not! **18** For if I rebuild those things I once destroyed, I prove myself to be a lawbreaker. **19** For through the law I died to the law, so that I might live for God.

translationNotes

while we seek to be justified in Christ

The phrase "justified in Christ" means justified because we are united with Christ and justified by means of Christ.

we too, were found to be sinners

The words "were found to be" are an idiom that emphasizes that "we are" certainly sinners. AT: "we see that we also certainly are sinners" (See: Idiom)

Absolutely not!

"Of course, that is not true!" This expression gives the strongest possible negative answer to the preceding rhetorical question "Does Christ become a servant of sin?" You may have a similar expression in your language that you could use here. (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- God
- justify, justification
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 2:20-21

UDB:

20 It is as though my old way of life ended when Christ died on the cross. I no longer direct my life. Christ who lives in my heart now directs how I live. And whatever I do now while I live, I do it trusting in God's Son. He is the one who loved me and offered himself as the sacrifice to provide God's forgiveness to me. **21** I do not set aside God's kindness, as if keeping the law could make us right with God. Otherwise, Christ would have died on the cross for nothing.

ULB:

20 I have been crucified with Christ. It is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. The life I now live in the flesh I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me. **21** I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing!

translationNotes

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

I do not set aside

Paul states a negative to emphasize the positive. AT: "I confirm the value of" (See: Litotes)

if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing

Paul is describing a situation that never existed. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

if righteousness could be gained through the law

"if people could become righteous by obeying the law"

then Christ died for nothing

"then Christ would have accomplished nothing by dying"

translationWords

- crucify, crucified
- Christ, Messiah

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- flesh
- faith
- Son of God, Son
- love, loves, loving, loved
- grace, gracious
- God
- righteous, righteousness
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- death, die, dead

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2 translationQuestions

Galatians 03 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Equality in Christ

In the church, there is equality between all members. Race, ethnic identity, sex and economic standing do not matter. All have equal standing with each other and in the eyes of God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Paul uses many different rhetorical questions to convince the Galatians of their sin. (See: Rhetorical Question and sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Those who believe are sons of Abraham"

Scholars are divided over what this means. Some believe Christians inherit the promises of Abraham, replacing the physical descendants of Israel. Others believe Christians are those who follow in the spiritual footsteps of Abraham, but they do not inherit the promises given to Abraham. In light of Paul's other teachings, and the context here, it is probable that Paul is talking about the Jewish Christians as living in equality with the Gentile Christians; but this does not negate the specific future and inheritance of the physical descendants of Abraham. (See: spirit, spirits, spiritual and Metaphor)

Links:

- **Galatians 03:01 Notes**

Galatians 3:1-3

UDB:

1 You fellow believers there in Galatia are very foolish! Someone must have bewitched you with their evil eye! I told you exactly how they had crucified Jesus Christ, did I not? **2** So I want you to tell me only one thing: When the Holy Spirit came to you, did he come because you were obeying the law of Moses? Or did the Spirit come to you because you had heard the good news and trusted in Christ? Certainly this is what happened. **3** You are very foolish! You first became Christians because God's Spirit enabled you. But now you think you will continue until you die by trying as hard as possible to obey the law.

ULB:

1 Foolish Galatians! Who has put a spell on you? It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified. **2** This is the only thing I want to learn from you: Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by believing what you heard? **3** Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now going to finish by the flesh?

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the believers in Galatia that God gave them God's Spirit when they believed the gospel by faith, not by their doing God's law.

General Information:

Paul is rebuking the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

Who has put a spell on you?

Paul is using irony and a rhetorical question to say that the Galatians are acting as though someone has put a spell on them. He does not really believe that someone has put a spell on them. AT: "You behave as if someone has put a spell on you!" (See: Irony and Rhetorical Question)

put a spell on you

"done magic on you" or "done witchcraft on you"

It was before your eyes that Jesus Christ was publicly displayed as crucified

Paul speaks of his clear teaching of Jesus being crucified as if he had put on public display a picture of Jesus being crucified. And he speaks of the Galatians having heard his teaching as if they had seen the picture. AT: "You yourselves heard the clear teaching about Jesus being crucified" (See: Metaphor)

This is the only thing I want to learn from you

This continues the irony from verse 1. Paul knows the answers to the rhetorical questions he is about to ask. (See: Irony)

Did you receive the Spirit by the works of the law or by believing what you heard?

Translate this rhetorical question as a question if you can, because the reader will be expecting a question here. Also, be sure that the reader knows that the answer to the question is "by believing what you heard," not "by doing what the law says." AT: "You received the Spirit, not by doing what the law says, but by believing what you heard." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Are you so foolish?

This rhetorical question shows that Paul is surprised and even angry that the Galatians are foolish. AT: "You are very foolish!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

by the flesh

The word "flesh" is a metonym for effort. AT: "by your own effort" or "by your own work" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Christ, Messiah
- crucify, crucified
- receive
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- works, deeds, work, acts
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- flesh

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians

- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:4-5

UDB:

[4] All the difficult things you have experienced after you believed in Christ would have been of no value at all if you had not been trusting in him. [5] When God now generously gives to you his Spirit and performs mighty deeds among you, do you think that it is because you obey God's law? Surely you know it is because when you heard the good news about Christ, you trusted in him!

ULB:

[4] Have you suffered so many things for nothing—if indeed it was for nothing? [5] Does he who gives the Spirit to you and works miracles among you do so by the works of the law, or by hearing with faith?

translationNotes

Have you suffered so many things for nothing … ?

Paul uses this question to remind the Galatians that when they were suffering, they believed that they would receive some benefit. AT: "Surely you did not think that you were suffering so many things for nothing … !" or "Surely you knew that there was some good purpose for suffering so many things … !" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Have you suffered so many things for nothing

It can be stated clearly that they had suffered these things because of people who opposed them for their faith in Christ. AT: "Have you suffered so many things by those who opposed you for your faith in Christ for nothing" or "You believed in Christ, and you suffered many things by those who oppose Christ. Were your belief and suffering for nothing" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for nothing

"uselessly" or "without the hope of receiving something good"

if indeed it was for nothing?

Possible meanings are 1) Paul uses this rhetorical question to warn them not to let their experiences be for nothing. AT: "Do not let it be for nothing!" or "Do not stop believing in Jesus Christ and let your suffering be for nothing." or 2) Paul uses this question to assure them that their suffering was not for nothing. AT: "It was certainly not for nothing!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Does he … do so by the works of the law, or by hearing with faith?

Paul asks another rhetorical question to remind the Galatians how people receive the Spirit. AT: "He … does not do it by the works of the law; he does it by hearing with faith." (See: Rhetorical Question)

by the works of the law

This represents people doing the works that the law requires. AT: "because you do what the law tells us to do"

by hearing with faith

Your language may require that what the people heard and whom they trusted be stated explicitly. AT: "because you heard the message and had faith in Jesus" or "because you listened to the message and trusted in Jesus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- works, deeds, work, acts
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- faith

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:6-9

UDB:

6 What you have experienced is just as Moses had written in the scriptures about Abraham. He wrote that Abraham trusted God, and as a result God declared Abraham good in his sight. **7** You should realize, therefore, that it is those who trust in Christ to save them whom God has made into descendants of Abraham. **8** Even before God began to make non-Jews good in his sight when they trusted in him, men wrote in the scriptures that he would do this. God announced this good news to Abraham, as we read in the scriptures, "Because of what you have done, I will bless all the people groups in the world." **9** So, we know by this that it is all those who trust in Christ whom God blesses along with Abraham, who also trusted in God.

ULB:

6 Just as Abraham "believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness," **7** in the same way, understand, then, that those of faith are the children of Abraham. **8** The scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, preached the gospel beforehand to Abraham, saying, "In you all the nations will be blessed." **9** So then, those of faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that even Abraham received righteousness by faith and not by the law.

it was credited to him as righteousness

God saw Abraham's faith in God, so then God considered Abraham righteous.

those of faith

"those who have faith." The meaning of the noun "faith" can be expressed with the verb "believe". AT: "those who believe" (See: Abstract Nouns)

children of Abraham

This represents people whom God views as he viewed Abraham. AT: "righteous in the same way as Abraham" (See: Metaphor)

foreseeing

Because God made the promise to Abraham and they wrote it down before the promise came through Christ, the scripture is like someone who knows the future before it happens. AT: "predicted" or "saw before it happened" (See: Personification)

In you

"Because of what you have done" or "Because I have blessed you." The word "you" refers to Abraham and is singular. (See: Forms of You)

all the nations

"all the people-groups in the world." God was emphasizing that he was not favoring only the Jewish people, his chosen group. His plan of salvation was for both Jews and non-Jews.

translationWords

- Abraham, Abram
- believe, believes, believed, belief
- God
- righteous, righteousness
- son, sons
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- justify, justification
- Gentile, Gentiles
- faith
- good news, gospel
- proclaim, proclamation
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:10-12

UDB:

10 God curses all those who think they can please God by obeying his law. It is just as you can read in the scriptures, "God will eternally punish everyone who does not continuously and completely obey all the laws that Moses wrote in the book of the law." **11** But God has said that if he declares any people good in his sight, it will not be because they obeyed his law. You can read in the scriptures, "Every person whom God declares to be good will live because he trusts God." **12** Whoever tries to obey the law is not trusting in Christ, "Whoever starts to do the things in the law must obey them all."

ULB:

10 All who rely on the works of the law are under a curse; and so it is written, "Cursed is everyone who does not abide by all the things written in the book of the law, and do them." **11** Now it is clear that no one is justified before God by the law, because "the righteous will live by faith." **12** But the law is not of faith, rather, "The person who does the works of the law must live by them."

translationNotes

All who rely on … the law are under a curse

Being under a curse represents being cursed. Here it refers to being eternally punished. "Those who rely on … the law are cursed" or "God will eternally punish those who rely on … the law" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

Now it is clear

What is clear can be stated explicitly. AT "The scriptures are clear" or "The scriptures teach clearly" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

no one is justified before God by the law

This can be stated with an active verb. AT: "God justifies no one by the law"

no one is justified before God by the law

Paul is correcting their believe that if they obeyed the law, God would justify them. AT: "no one is justified before God by obeying the law" or "God does not justify anyone for their obedience to the law" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the righteous will live by faith

The nominal adjective "righteous" refers to righteous people. AT: "righteous people will live by faith" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

the works of the law

"what the law says we must do"

must live by them

Possible meanings are 1) "must obey them all" or 2) "will be judged by his ability to do what the law demands."

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- written
- God
- justify, justification
- righteous, righteousness
- faith

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:13-14

UDB:

13 Christ stopped God from having to curse us as they wrote in the law he must. This happened when God cursed Christ in our place. You can read in the scripture, "God curses everyone whom they hang on a tree." **14** God cursed Christ in order to bless the non-Jews who believe in Christ just as he blessed Abraham. And he blessed the non-Jews so that we might receive the Spirit, whom he promised to all who trust in Christ.

ULB:

13 Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us—for it is written, "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree"— **14** so that the blessing of Abraham might come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds these believers again that keeping the law could not save a person and that the law did not add a new condition to the promise by faith given to Abraham.

from the curse of the law

The noun "curse" can be expressed with the verb "curse." AT: "from being cursed because of the law" or "from being cursed for not obeying the law"

by becoming a curse for us

The noun "curse" can be expressed with the verb "curse." AT: "by being cursed for us" or "when God cursed him instead of us" (See: Abstract Nouns)

from the curse of the law … becoming a curse for us … Cursed is everyone

Curse here represents being condemned. AT: "from being condemned by the law … being condemned instead of us … Condemned is everyone" (See: Metonymy)

hangs on a tree

Paul expected his audience to understand that he was referring to Jesus hanging on the cross.

might

"will"

we

The word "we" includes the people who would read the letter. (See: Inclusive "We")

translationWords

- Christ, Messiah
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- written
- hang
- Gentile, Gentiles
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- faith

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:15-16

UDB:

15 My fellow believers, God's promise is like a contract between two people. After they sign it, no one can cancel it, nor can they add anything to it. **16** God promised to bless Abraham and his special descendant. The scriptures do not say, "your descendants," that is, many people, but instead "your descendant," meaning just one person, Christ.

ULB:

15 Brothers, let me speak in human terms. In a man-made contract, no one can set it aside or add to it, once it is established by law. **16** Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his descendant. It does not say, "to descendants," referring to many, but instead to only one, "and to your descendant," who is Christ.

translationNotes

Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

in human terms

"as a person" or "of things most people understand"

Now

This word shows that Paul has stated a general principle and is now beginning to introduce a specific case.

referring to many

"referring to many descendants"

to your descendant

The word "your" is singular and refers to a specific person, who is a particular descendant of Abraham (and that descendant is identified as "Christ"). (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- covenant, covenants
- promise, promises, promised
- Abraham, Abram
- descendant, descended from
- Christ, Messiah

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:17-18

UDB:

17 This is what I am saying. God established an agreement with Abraham that the law which he gave to Moses 430 years later could not cancel. **18** This is because if what God is giving to us forever comes because we keep his law, then he would not be giving it because he had promised to do so. In reality, however, God gave Abraham this gift because he had freely promised to give it.

ULB:

17 Now what I mean is this: The law, which came 430 years afterward, does not set aside the covenant previously established by God. **18** For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise. But God gave it to Abraham by a promise.

translationNotes

430 years

"four hundred and thirty years" (See: Numbers)

For if the inheritance comes by the law, then it no longer comes by promise

Paul is speaking of a situation that did not exist to emphasize that the inheritance came only by means of the promise. AT: "the inheritance comes to us by means of the promise, because we could not keep the demands of God's law" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were an inheritance of property and wealth from a family member, and eternal blessings and redemption. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- covenant, covenants
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:19-20

UDB:

19 So why did God later give his law to us? God gave his law to teach us that we all deliberately break it. And looking forward, God gave the law for the time when a descendent of Abraham would come. That descendent is the one who receives the promise that was made before to Abraham. The angels protected and applied the law by the authority of the one who would stand between God and people. **20** Now, when one person speaks directly with another, there is no mediator. And God himself made his promises directly to Abraham.

ULB:

19 What, then, was the purpose of the law? It was added because of trespasses, until the descendant of Abraham would come to whom the promise had been made. The law was put into force through angels by a mediator. **20** Now a mediator implies more than one person, but God is one.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells the believers in Galatia why God gave the law.

What, then, was the purpose of the law?

Paul uses a rhetorical question to introduce the next topic he wants to discuss. It can also be translated as a statement. AT: "I will tell you what the purpose of the law is." or "Let me tell you why God gave the law." (See: Rhetorical Question)

It was added

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God added it" or "God added the law" (See: Active or Passive)

The law was put into force through angels by a mediator

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God issued the law with the help of angels, and a mediator put it into force" (See: Active or Passive)

a mediator

"a representative"

Now a mediator implies more than one person, but God is one

God gave his promise to Abraham without a mediator, but he gave the law to Moses with a mediator. As a result, Paul's readers may have thought that the law somehow made the promise to no effect. Paul is stating what his readers might have thought here, and he will respond to them in the verses that follow.

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- descendant, descended from
- Abraham, Abram
- angel, angels, archangel
- mediator

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:21-22

UDB:

²¹ So do the words of the law speak against what God promises? Certainly not. If we could obey the law and then live forever with God, then he certainly would have regarded us as good in his sight. ²² But that was impossible. Instead, because we sin, the law in the scriptures controls us—and all things—just as if we were in prison. So when God promised to free us from that prison, he was speaking about anyone who believes in Jesus Christ.

ULB:

²¹ So is the law against the promises of God? Absolutely not! For if a law had been given that could give life, then righteousness would certainly have come by the law. ²² But the scripture imprisoned everything under sin. God did this so that the promise to save us by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe.

translationNotes

General Information:

The word "us" in this section refers to all Christians. (See: Inclusive "We")

against

"opposed to" or "in conflict with"

if a law had been given that could give life

This can be stated in active form, and the abstract noun "life" can be translated with the verb "live." AT: "if God had given a law that enabled those who kept it to live" (See: Active or Passive and Abstract Nouns)

righteousness would certainly have come by the law

"we could have become righteous by obeying that law"

scripture imprisoned everything under sin. God did this so that the promise to save us by faith in Jesus Christ might be given to those who believe

Other possible meanings are 1) "because we all sin, God put all things under the control of the law, like putting them in prison, so that what he has promised to those who have faith in Christ Jesus he might give to those who believe" or 2) "because we sin, God put all things under the control of the law, like putting them in prison. He did this because what he has promised to those who have faith in Christ Jesus he wants to give to those who believe."

scripture

Paul is treating scripture as though it were a person and is speaking of God, who wrote scripture. AT: "God" (See: Personification)

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- promise, promises, promised
- God
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- righteous, righteousness
- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- save, saves, saved, safe
- faith
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- believe, believes, believed, belief

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:23-26

UDB:

23 Before God revealed the good news about how people should trust in Christ, his law was like a soldier who kept us in prison, unable to move about. **24** Like a father protects his small child by telling a slave to take care of him, God was supervising us by his law until Christ came. He did this so that he might now declare us good in his sight, if we trust in Christ. **25** But now that we can trust in Christ, we no longer need God's law to supervise us.

26 I say this because you are all God's children because you have trusted in Christ Jesus.

ULB:

23 Now before faith came, we were held captive under the law, imprisoned until faith should be revealed. **24** So then the law became our guardian until Christ came, so that we might be justified by faith. **25** But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a guardian. **26** For you are all sons of God through faith in Christ Jesus.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds those in Galatia that believers are free in God's family, not slaves under the law.

we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the law held us captive and we were in prison" or "the law held us captive in prison" (See: Active or Passive)

we were held captive under the law, imprisoned

The way the law controlled us is spoken of as if the law were a prison guard holding us as captives. AT: "the law controlled us like a prison guard" (See: Metaphor)

until faith should be revealed

This can be stated in active form, and who this faith is in can be stated clearly. AT: "until God would reveal that he justifies those who have faith in Christ" or "until God would reveal that he justifies those who trust in Christ" (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

guardian

More than simply "one who gives oversight to a child," this was usually a slave who was responsible for enforcing rules and behaviors given by the parent and would report to the parent on the child's actions.

until Christ came

"until the time when Christ came"

so that we might be justified

Before Christ came, God had planned to justify us. When Christ came, he carried out his plan to justify us. This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that God would declare us to be righteous" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- faith
- Christ, Messiah
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- justify, justification
- son, sons
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 3:27-29

UDB:

27 All of you who trust in Christ and were baptized so that you are joined to him, have taken on the characteristics of Christ's life. **28** If you are believers, it does not matter to God if you are Jews or non-Jews, slaves or free persons, males or females, because all of you are together joined to Christ Jesus. **29** Furthermore, since you belong to Christ, he makes you into descendants of Abraham, and you will receive everything that God has promised him and us.

ULB:

27 For as many of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. **28** There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female, for you are all one in Christ Jesus. **29** Then if you are Christ's, you are Abraham's descendants, and heirs according to promise.

translationNotes

For as many of you who were baptized into Christ

"For all of you who were baptized into Christ"

have clothed yourselves with Christ

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor meaning that they have been united to Christ. AT: "have become united with Christ" or "belong to Christ" or 2) this is a metaphor meaning that they have become like Christ. AT: "have become like Christ" (See: Metaphor)

There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is neither male nor female

"God sees no difference between Jew and Greek, slave and free, male and female"

heirs

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- baptize, baptized, baptism
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

- Christ, Messiah
- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Greek, Grecian
- Abraham, Abram
- descendant, descended from
- heir
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3 translationQuestions

Galatians 04 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:27, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sonship

This is a complex issue discussed in this chapter. Scholars have many views on the issue of Israel's sonship. Not all of Abraham's physical descendants inherit the promises of Abraham. Only the children of Abraham, through his sons Isaac and Jacob, can inherit those promises and only those who follow him spiritually. It is through their faith that they become adopted into the family as sons with an inheritance ("children of promise"). (See: inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir, promise, promises, promised, spirit, spirits, spiritual, faith and adoption, adopt, adopted)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Abba

This is a word in Aramaic. Paul does not "translate" this word into Greek but chooses to "transliterate" it by transferring it into Greek, using Greek letters instead of Aramaic letters. The translators of the ULB and UDB have not translated this word either. The translator should try to form the sounds of this without translating its meaning. It was an informal way to refer to a person's father in ancient Israel.

Links:

- **Galatians 4:1**

Galatians 4:1-2

UDB:

[1] Now, I will further discuss children and heirs. An heir is a son who will later possess all that his father has. But as long as that heir is a child, he is like a slave whom others control. [2] Until the day that his father has previously determined, other persons supervise the child and manage his property.

ULB:

[1] I am saying that the heir, as long as he is a child, is no different from a slave, though he is owner of the entire estate. [2] But he is under guardians and trustees until the date set by his father.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul continues to remind the Galatian believers that Christ came to redeem those who were under the law, and that he made them no more slaves but sons.

no different from

"the same as"

guardians

people with legal responsibility for children

trustees

people whom others trust to keep valuable items safe

translationWords

- heir
- servant, slave, slavery
- ancestor, father, forefather

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:3-5

UDB:

3 Likewise, when we were like young children, we were under the evil rules that everyone in this world lives by. Those rules controlled us like masters control their slaves. **4** But when the time that God had determined arrived, he sent Jesus, his Son, into the world. Jesus was born to a human mother, and he had to obey the law. **5** God sent Jesus to rescue us from the law controlling us. He did this to adopt us as his own children.

ULB:

3 So also, when we were children, we were enslaved to the elemental principles of the world. **4** But when the fullness of time had come, God sent out his Son, born of a woman, born under the law. **5** He did this to redeem those under the law, so that we might receive adoption as sons.

translationNotes

General Information:

The word "we" here refers to all Christians, including Paul's readers. (See: Inclusive "We")

the elemental principles of the world

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the laws or moral principles of the world, or 2) this refers to spiritual powers, which some people thought control what happens on earth.

redeem

Paul uses the metaphor of a person buying back lost property or buying the freedom of a slave as a picture of Jesus paying for his people's sins by dying on the cross. (See: Metaphor)

Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

translationWords

- enslave, in bondage
- God
- Son of God, Son
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

- adoption, adopt, adopted
- son, sons

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:6-7

UDB:

[6] Because you are now God's sons, he sent the Spirit of his Son to live in each of us. It is his Spirit who enables us to call God, "Father, our dear Father!" This shows that we are God's sons. [7] So, because of what God has done, no longer is each of you like a slave. Instead, each of you is a child of God. Since each of you is now God's child, God will also give you all that he has promised. God himself will do it!

ULB:

[6] And because you are sons, God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who calls out, "Abba, Father." [7] So you are no longer a slave, but a son, and if a son, then you are also an heir through God.

translationNotes

you are sons … you are no longer a slave, but a son

Paul uses the word for male child here because the subject is inheritance. In his culture and that of his readers, inheritance passed most commonly, but not always, to male children. He was neither specifying nor excluding female children here.

God has sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, who calls out, "Abba, Father."

By calling out "Abba, Father" the Spirit assures us that we are God's children and he loves us.

sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts

The heart is metonym for the part of a person that thinks and feels. AT: "sent his Son's Spirit to show us how to think and act" (See: Metonymy)

his Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

who calls

The Spirit is the one who calls.

Abba, Father

This is the way a young child would address his father in Paul's home language, but not in the language of the Galatian readers. To keep the sense of a foreign language, translate this as a word that sounds as much like "Abba" as your language allows.

you are no longer a slave … you are also an heir

Paul is addressing his readers as though they are one person, so "you" here is singular. (See: Forms of You)

heir

The people to whom God has made promises are spoken of as if they were to inherit property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- son, sons
- God
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- Son of God, Son
- heart, hearts
- servant, slave, slavery
- heir

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:8-9

UDB:

8 When you did not know God, you worshiped gods that really did not really exist. You were their slaves. **9** But now you do know God as your God. Perhaps it would be better, however, to say that now God knows each of you. So why are you returning again to follow the weak and worthless evil rules of this world? You do not really want to become their slaves all over again, do you?

ULB:

8 But at that time, when you did not know God, you were made to be slaves to those who are, by their natural powers, not gods at all. **9** But now that you have come to know God, or rather that you are known by God, how is it that you are turning back to the weak and worthless elemental principles? Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers that they are again trying to live under God's laws rather than living by faith.

General Information:

He continues to rebuke the Galatians by asking rhetorical questions.

those who are

"those things that are" or "those spirits who are"

you are known by God

This can be stated in active form. AT: "God knows you" (See: Active or Passive)

how is it that you are turning back to … principles?

This is the first of two rhetorical questions. AT: "you should not go back to … principles." (See: Rhetorical Question)

elemental principles

See how you translated this phrase in Galatians 4:3.

Do you want to be enslaved all over again?

This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not want to be slaves all over again!" or "It seems that you do want to be slaves again." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- God
- servant, slave, slavery
- god, gods, goddess

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:10-11

UDB:

10 It actually seems that you do! You are once more obeying what others insist you should do on certain special days and at special times in certain months, seasons, and years. **11** I worry about you! I worked so hard for you, but it seems that it was all for nothing.

ULB:

10 You observe days and new moons and seasons and years! **11** I am afraid for you that somehow my work with you may have been for nothing.

translationNotes

You observe days and new moons and seasons and years

Paul is speaking of their being careful to celebrate certain times, thinking that doing that will make them right with God. AT: "You carefully celebrate days and new moons and seasons and years"

may have been for nothing

"may have been useless" or "has not had any effect effect"

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- labor, laborer

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:12-14

UDB:

¹² My fellow believers, I strongly urge you to become like me, because I do not let the law control me. I became like you non-Jews when I became free from the law, so you too should free yourselves from the gods. When I first went to you, you did not harm me at all, but now you are making me worry about you very much.

¹³ You remember that the first time I told you the good news, I did it because I was sick. ¹⁴ Although you might have despised me because I was sick, you did not reject me. Instead, you welcomed me like you would welcome an angel that came from God. You welcomed me like you would welcome Christ Jesus himself!

ULB:

¹² I beg you, brothers, become like me, for I also have become like you. You did me no wrong. ¹³ But you know that it was because of a physical illness that I proclaimed the gospel to you the first time. ¹⁴ Though my physical condition put you to the test, you did not despise or reject me. Instead you welcomed me as if I were an angel of God, as if I were Christ Jesus himself.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul reminds the Galatian believers how kindly they treated him when he was with them, and he encourages them to continue to trust him while he is not there with them.

beg

Here this means to ask or urge strongly. This is not the word used to ask for money or food or physical objects.

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

You did me no wrong

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "You treated me well" or "You treated me as you should have"

Though my physical condition put you to the test

"Though it was difficult for you to see me so physically ill"

despise

"hate very much"

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- proclaim, proclamation
- good news, gospel
- reject
- receive
- angel, angels, archangel
- God
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Those who are insisting on obeying the Jewish laws are trying to get you to follow them, but they are not doing it for your good. They want to keep you away from me, because they want you to follow them, not me. ¹⁸ Well, it is good to insist on doing the right things; you should do this always, and not only when I am with you. But make sure it is the right people who are teaching you what to do!

ULB:

¹⁷ They are zealous to win you over, but for no good. They want to shut you out, so you may be zealous for them. ¹⁸ It is always good to be zealous for a good purpose, and not only when I am present with you.

translationNotes

to win you over

"to convince you to join them"

to shut you out

"to shut you out from us" or "to make you stop being loyal to us"

zealous for them

"zealous to do what they tell you to do"

translationWords

- zeal, zealous

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:19-20

UDB:

19 You who are like my children, once again I am very worried about you, and I will continue to be worried until you become like Christ. **20** But I do wish that I could be with you now and that I might talk more gently with you, because right now I do not know what to do about you.

ULB:

19 My little children, again I am in the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you. **20** I wish I could be present with you now and change my tone, because I am perplexed about you.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul tells believers that grace and law cannot work together.

My little children

This is a metaphor for disciples or followers. AT: "You who are disciples because of me" (See: Metaphor)

I am in the pains of childbirth for you until Christ is formed in you

Paul uses childbirth as a metaphor for his concern about the Galatians. AT: "I am in pain as though I were a woman having to give birth to you, and I will continue to be in pain until Christ truly controls you" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- children, child
- labor pains, in labor

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:21-23

UDB:

21 Let me try to explain this again. Some of you desire to obey all the law of God, but do you really pay attention to what the law says? **22** In the law we read that Abraham became the father of two sons. His female slave, Hagar, bore one son, and his wife Sarah, who was not a slave, bore the other. **23** Ishmael, the son born by Hagar, the female slave, was conceived naturally. But Isaac, the son born by Sarah, who was not a slave, was conceived miraculously because God had promised Abraham that he would have a son.

ULB:

21 Tell me, you who desire to be under the law, do you not listen to the law? **22** For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave girl and one by the free woman. **23** But the one was born by the slave girl according to the flesh, but the other was born by the free woman through promise.

translationNotes

Tell me

"I want to ask a question" or "I want to tell you something"

do you not listen to the law?

Paul is introducing what he will say next. AT: "you need to learn what the law really says." or "let me tell you what the law really says." (See: Rhetorical Question)

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Abraham, Abram
- servant, slave, slavery
- flesh
- free, freedom, liberty
- promise, promises, promised

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:24-25

UDB:

24 Now these two women symbolize two covenants. God made the first covenant with the people of Israel at Mount Sinai. That covenant requires the Israelites to live like a slave to the law. So Hagar, the female slave, symbolizes this covenant. **25** So Hagar symbolizes Mount Sinai, in the land of Arabia. But Hagar also symbolizes the city of Jerusalem as it is today. This is because Jerusalem is like a slave mother: She and all her children—that is, her people—are like slaves, because they all must obey the law that God gave to Israel at Mount Sinai.

ULB:

24 These things may be interpreted as an allegory, for these women represent two covenants. One of them is from Mount Sinai and she gives birth to children who are slaves. This is Hagar. **25** Now Hagar represents Mount Sinai in Arabia; and she represents the present Jerusalem, for she is in slavery with her children.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul begins a story to illustrate a truth—that law and grace cannot exist together.

These things may be interpreted as an allegory

"This story of the two sons is like a picture of what I will tell you now"

as an allegory

An "allegory" is a story in which the people and things in it represent other things. In Paul's allegory, the two women referred to in Galatians 4:22 represent two covenants.

Mount Sinai

"Mount Sinai" is a synecdoche for the law that Moses gave to the Israelites there. AT: "Mount Sinai, where Moses gave the law to Israel" (See: Synecdoche)

she gives birth to children who are slaves

Paul treats the law as if it were a person. AT: "The people under this covenant are like slaves who have to obey the law" (See: Metaphor and Personification)

represents

"is a picture of"

she is in slavery with her children

Hagar is a slave and her children are slaves with her. AT: "Jerusalem, like Hagar, is a slave, and her children are slaves with her" (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- covenant, covenants
- Sinai, Mount Sinai
- Hagar
- Arabia, Arabian
- Jerusalem
- enslave, in bondage
- children, child

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:26-27

UDB:

²⁶ But there is a new Jerusalem in heaven, and that city is like a mother of all us who believe in Christ, and that city is free! ²⁷ That new Jerusalem will have many more people than the old Jerusalem. This is because the prophet Isaiah wrote,

"You who live in Jerusalem, you must rejoice!

Now you have no children,

like a woman who cannot have children!

But one day you will shout with joy

even though you have no children now.

Like a woman who cannot give birth to children,

and you feel deserted.

You will have more children than

any woman with a husband could have borne."

ULB:

²⁶ But the Jerusalem that is above is free, and she is our mother. ²⁷ For it is written,

"Rejoice, you barren one who does not give birth;

cry out and shout for joy, you who are not suffering the pains of childbirth;

because the children of the abandoned woman are more numerous

than the woman who has a husband."

translationNotes

free

Here "free" means not bound, not a slave.

Rejoice

"Be happy"

you barren one ... you who are not suffering

Here "you" refers to the barren woman and is singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- Jerusalem
- free, freedom, liberty
- barren

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:28-29

UDB:

28 Now, my fellow believers, you have become children of God because you believed in what God promised to give to us. You are like Isaac, who was born because Abraham had believed in what God promised to give to him. **29** But long ago Abraham's son Ishmael, who was born naturally, caused trouble for Abraham's son Isaac, who was born because the Holy Spirit made it happen. It is the same way now. The people who are slaves to God's law persecute those of us who trust in what Christ has promised to give us.

ULB:

28 But you, brothers, like Isaac, are children of promise. **29** At that time the one who was born according to the flesh persecuted the one born according to the Spirit. It is the same now.

translationNotes

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

children of promise

Possible meanings are that the Galatians have become God's children 1) by believing God's promise or 2) because God worked miracles to fulfill his promises to Abraham, first by giving Abraham a son and then by making the Galatians children of Abraham and thus sons of God.

according to the flesh

This refers to Abraham's becoming Ishmael's father by taking Hagar as a wife. AT: "by means of human action" or "because of what people did" (See: Metaphor)

according to the Spirit

"because of something the Spirit did"

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- Isaac
- children, child
- flesh

- persecute, persecution
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 4:30-31

UDB:

30 But these are the words in the scriptures: "The son of the woman who was not a slave will inherit what his father owns. The slave boy will inherit nothing. So send away from this place the female slave and her son!" **31** My fellow believers, we are not children who have a slave woman as our mother, but we are the children who are born from a woman who was free, and so are we are free too!

ULB:

30 But what does the scripture say? "Send away the slave girl and her son. For the son of the slave girl will not share in the inheritance with the son of the free woman." **31** Therefore, brothers, we are not children of a slave girl, but of the free woman.

translationNotes

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

but of the free woman

The words "we are children" are understood from the previous phrase. This can be translated as a separate sentence. AT: "Rather, we are children of the free woman" (See: Ellipsis)

translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- servant, slave, slavery
- free, freedom, liberty
- brother, brothers
- children, child

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4 translationQuestions

Galatians 05 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Paul continues talking about the law of Moses as something which traps or enslaves a person. (See: law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh)

Special concepts in this chapter

Fruit of the Spirit

Many scholars have observed that the phrase "the fruit of the Spirit" is singular and not plural, even though it begins a list of several things. The singular form should remain in translation in a singular form if possible. Do not translate: "the fruits of the spirit are" in attempt to force agreement. (See: fruit, fruitful)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Illustrations

Paul uses several metaphors to illustrate his points. Running a race and yeast are two metaphors he uses in this chapter to help explain complicated issues. (See: Metaphor)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue and it is possible that "flesh" is a metaphor for a person's sinful nature. It is not the physical part of man that is sinful and it appears that Paul is teaching that while man remains alive ("in the flesh"), he will remain sinful regardless of his effort, but his new nature will be fighting against his old nature. Flesh is used in this chapter to contrast with that which is spiritual. (See: flesh)

"You are separated from Christ, all you who are "justified" by the law. You have fallen away from grace."

Some scholars believe Paul teaches that this type of action causes a person to lose their salvation. It is more probable that Paul is saying these people have walked away from grace as a rule, and have exchanged it for the law. (See: grace, gracious)

The authors of the ULB have also chosen to place "justified" in quotation marks to indicate that this is a hypothetical situation and that no one is able to be justified by the law. (See: justify, justification and Hypothetical Situations)

Links:

- **Galatians 05:01 Notes**

Galatians 5:1-2

UDB:

1 Christ set us free from the law so that it may control us no longer. So stop anyone who says you are still slaves to the law, and do not let the law control you like slaves again. **2** Consider very carefully what I, Paul, an apostle, now tell you. If you let anyone circumcise you, what Christ has done for you will not help you at all!

ULB:

1 For freedom Christ has set us free. Stand firm, therefore, and do not again be put under the control of a yoke of slavery.

2 Look, I, Paul, say to you that if you let yourselves be circumcised, Christ will not benefit you in any way.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul applies the allegory by reminding the believers to use their liberty in Christ because all the law is fulfilled in loving neighbors as ourselves.

For freedom

The translation needs to emphasize "freedom" in contrast with the slavery talked about in the previous verses.

For freedom Christ has set us free

"It is so that we can be free that Christ has set us free"

Stand firm

Standing firm here represents being determined not to change. How they are not to change can be stated clearly. AT: "Do not give in to the arguments of people who teach something else" or "Be determined to stay free" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

if you let yourselves be circumcised

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for Judaism. AT: "if you turn to the Jewish religion" (See: Metonymy)

translationWords

- free, freedom, liberty
- Christ, Messiah
- yoke
- Paul, Saul
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:3-4

UDB:

3 Once again I solemnly declare to every man whom they have circumcised, that he must obey the law perfectly, for God to declare him good in his sight. **4** If you expect God to declare you good in his sight because you try to keep the law, you have separated yourself from Christ; God will no longer act kindly toward you.

ULB:

3 I testify again to every man who lets himself be circumcised that he is obligated to obey the whole law. **4** You are cut off from Christ, you who would be justified by the law; you no longer experience grace.

translationNotes

testify

"declare" or "serve as a witness"

to every man who lets himself be circumcised

Paul is using circumcision as a metonym for being Jewish. AT: "to every person who has become a Jew" (See: Metonymy)

obligated

"bound" or "constrained" or "enslaved"

You are cut off from Christ

"You have ended your relationship with Christ"

you who would be justified by the law

Paul is speaking ironically here. He actually teaches that no Jew can be justified by trying to do the deeds required by the law. AT: "all you who think you can be justified by doing the deeds required by the law" or "you who want to be justified by the law" (See: Irony)

you no longer experience grace

Who that grace comes from can be stated clearly. AT: "God will not be gracious to you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

translationWords

- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Christ, Messiah
- justify, justification
- grace, gracious

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:5-8

UDB:

5 We whom God's Spirit enables us to trust in Christ are confidently waiting for the time when God will declare us good in His sight. **6** God is not concerned whether we are circumcised or not circumcised. Instead, God is concerned about whether we trust in Christ, with the result that we love others because we trust in him.

7 You were following Christ so well! Who stopped you from obeying his true message? **8** God, the one who chose you, is not the one who is persuading you to think like this!

ULB:

5 For through the Spirit, by faith, we eagerly wait for the hope of righteousness. **6** In Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision means anything, but only faith working through love. **7** You were running well. Who prevented you from obeying the truth? **8** This persuasion does not come from him who calls you!

translationNotes

General Information:

Here the word "we" refers to Paul and those who oppose the circumcision of Christians. He is probably including the Galatians. (See: Inclusive "We")

For

"This is because"

by faith, we eagerly wait for the certain hope of righteousness

Possible meanings are 1) "we are waiting by faith for the certain hope of righteousness" or 2) "we are waiting for the certain hope of righteousness that comes by faith."

we eagerly wait for the certain hope of righteousness

"we are waiting patiently and with excitement for God to put us right with himself forever, and we expect him to do it"

neither circumcision nor uncircumcision

These are metonymy for being a Jew or a non-Jew. AT: "neither being a Jew nor not being a Jew" (See: Metonymy)

but only faith working through love

"Rather, God is concerned with our faith in him, which we show by loving others"

means anything

is worthwhile

You were running

"You were practicing what Jesus taught"

This persuasion does not come from him who calls you

"The one who persuades you to do that is not God, the one who calls you"

him who calls you

What he calls them to can be stated clearly. AT: "the one who calls you to be his people" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

persuasion

To persuade someone is to get that person to change what he believes and so to act differently.

translationWords

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- faith
- righteous, righteousness
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Christ, Messiah
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- run, running
- call, calls, calling, called

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:9-10

UDB:

9 This false teaching that someone is teaching you is in danger of spreading to all of you, just like a little yeast in the dough causes it all to swell up. **10** I am certain that the Lord Jesus will keep you from believing in anything else except his true good news. God will certainly punish anyone who is confusing you by teaching this false message, whoever he is.

ULB:

9 A little yeast makes the whole batch of dough rise. **10** I have confidence in the Lord that you will take no other view. The one who is troubling you will pay the penalty, whoever he is.

translationNotes

you will take no other view

"you will not believe anything different from what I am telling you"

The one who is troubling you will pay the penalty

"God will punish the one who is troubling you"

is troubling you

"is causing you to be uncertain about what is truth" or "stirs up trouble among you"

whoever he is

Possible meanings are 1) Paul does not know the names of the people who are telling the Galatians that they need to obey the law of Moses or 2) Paul does not want the Galatians to care about whether those who "confuse" them are rich or poor or great or small or religious or not religious.

translationWords

- yeast, leaven
- Lord

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:11-12

UDB:

11 But, my fellow believers, maybe someone is saying that I still teach that you must let them circumcise you. I certainly taught that before I followed Christ, but I am not teaching that any longer. But what they are saying cannot be true; otherwise, no one would be persecuting me now. No, I tell you that if people think they have to be circumcised to follow Christ, then the fact that Christ died on the cross no longer make any difference to them. **12** I wish that those who are confusing you would go all the way and castrate themselves!

ULB:

11 Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted? In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed. **12** As for those who are disturbing you, I wish they would castrate themselves!

translationNotes

Brothers, if I still proclaim circumcision, why am I still being persecuted?

Paul is describing a situation that does not exist to emphasize that people are persecuting him because he is not preaching that people need to become Jews. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Brothers, you can see that I am not still proclaiming circumcision because the Jews are persecuting me." (See: Rhetorical Question and Hypothetical Situations)

Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

In that case the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

Paul is describing a situation that does not exist to emphasize that people persecute him because he is preaching that God forgives people because of Jesus' work on the cross. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

In that case

"If I were still saying that people need to become Jews"

the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the teaching about the cross has no stumbling block" or "there is nothing in the teaching of the cross that would cause people to stumble" (See: Active or Passive)

the stumbling block of the cross has been removed

Stumbling represents sinning, and a stumbling block represents something that causes people to sin. In this case the sin is to reject the truth of the teaching that in order to be made right with God, people only need to believe that Jesus died on the cross for us. AT: "the teaching about the cross that causes people to reject the truth has been removed" or "there is nothing in the teaching about Jesus dying on the cross that would lead people to reject the teaching" (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

castrate themselves

Possible meanings are 1) literal, to cut off their male organs so as to become eunuchs or 2) metaphorical, completely withdraw from the Christian community. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- proclaim, proclamation
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- persecute, persecution
- stumbling block, stone of stumbling
- cross

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:13-15

UDB:

13 My fellow believers, God has called you to set you free. But do not think he set you free so you could sin. Instead, love and serve each other, because you are now free to do that! **14** Remember something that Jesus said. He said all the law means this: "Love each person like you love yourself." **15** So if you attack and harm each other like wild animals, you might completely destroy each other.

ULB:

13 For you were called to freedom, brothers. But do not use your freedom as an opportunity for the sinful nature; rather, through love serve one another. **14** For the whole law is fulfilled in one command: "You must love your neighbor as yourself." **15** But if you bite and devour one another, watch out that you are not consumed by one another.

translationNotes

For

Paul is giving the reason for his words in Galatians 5:12.

you were called to freedom

This can be expressed in an active form. AT: "God has called you to freedom" (See: Active or Passive)

you were called to freedom

Possible meanings are 1) "God has chosen you to be his people so that you can be free" or 2) "God has commanded you to be free"

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

an opportunity for the sinful nature

The relationship between the opportunity and the sinful nature can be stated more clearly. AT: "an opportunity for you to behave according to your sinful nature" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the whole law is fulfilled in one command

Possible meanings are 1) "you can state the whole law in just one commandment, which is this" or 2) "by obeying one commandment, you obey all the commandments, and that one commandment is this."

You must love your neighbor as yourself

The words "you," "your," and "yourself" are all singular. (See: Forms of You)

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- brother, brothers
- free, freedom, liberty
- flesh
- love, loves, loving, loved
- serve, service
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- neighbor

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:16-18

UDB:

16 So I tell you this: Always let God's Spirit lead you. If you do that, you will not sin, as normal human beings want to do. **17** When you want to sin, you go against God's Spirit. And God's Spirit goes against what normal humans want. These two are always fighting against each other. The result is that you do not always do the good things that you truly desire to do. **18** But when God's Spirit leads you, the law does not control you.

ULB:

16 But I say, walk by the Spirit and you will not carry out the desires of the sinful nature. **17** For the desires of the sinful nature are against the Spirit, and the desires of the Spirit are against the sinful nature. For these are in conflict with each other, so that you cannot do the things you want. **18** But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul explains how the Spirit gives control over sin.

walk by the Spirit

Walking is a metaphor for living. AT: "conduct your life in the power of the Holy Spirit" or "live your life in dependence on the Spirit" (See: Metaphor)

you will not carry out the desires of the sinful nature

The phrase "carry out someone's desires" is an idiom meaning "do what someone desires." AT: "You will not do what your sinful nature desires" (See: Idiom)

the desires of the sinful nature

The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person and wanted to sin. AT: "what you want to do because of your sinful nature" or "the things you want to do because you are sinful" (See: Personification)

not under the law

"not obligated to obey the law of Moses"

translationWords

- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- fulfill, fulfilled
- lust
- flesh
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:19-21

UDB:

[19] Now what normal human beings want to do is easy to see. They commit evil sexual actions, sexual actions that even go against what is natural, and they desire things that are against good laws. [20] They also worship false gods and things that represent those gods. They try to get evil spirits to act for them. People are hostile to others. People quarrel with each other. People are jealous. People behave angrily. People try to get others to think highly of them and do not consider what others want. People do not associate with others. People associate only with those who agree with them. [21] People want what others have. People get drunk. People get drunk and riot. And they do other things like these. I warn you now, just like I warned you previously, that the ones who constantly act and think like this will not receive what God has for his own people when he reveals himself to everyone as king.

ULB:

[19] Now the works of the sinful nature are evident: sexual immorality, impurity, depravity, [20] idolatry, sorcery, hostilities, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, divisions, [21] envy, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, and things like these. I warn you, as I warned you before, that those who practice such things will not inherit the kingdom of God.

translationNotes

the works of the sinful nature

The abstract noun "works" can be translated with the verb "does." AT: "what the sinful nature does"

the works of the sinful nature

The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person who does things. AT: "what people do because of their sinful nature" or "the things people do because they are sinful" (See: Personification)

inherit

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: Metaphor)

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- flesh

- lust
- idol, idolatrous
- sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:22-24

UDB:

22 But as we grow in trusting Christ, God's Spirit starts causing us to love others. We are joyful. We are peaceful. We are patient. We are kind. We are good. We are ones whom others can trust. **23** We are gentle. We control our behavior. There is no law that says people should not think and act in such ways. **24** Furthermore, we who belong to Christ Jesus have stopped allowing ourselves to do the evil things that we did in the past. It is as though we had nailed them to a cross and killed these evil things!

ULB:

22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, **23** gentleness, and self-control; against such things there is no law. **24** Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires.

translationNotes

the fruit of the Spirit is love ... self-control

Paul uses fruit as a metaphor for what people can see in other people. AT: "people whom the Spirit controls will display love ... self-control like a tree produces fruit" (See: Metaphor)

fruit of the Spirit

"what the Spirit produces"

have crucified the sinful nature with its passions and desires

Paul speaks of Christians who refuse to live according to their sinful nature as if it were a person and they have killed it on a cross. AT: "refuse to live according the sinful nature with its passions and desires, as if they killed it on a cross" (See: Personification and Metaphor)

the sinful nature with its passions and desires

The sinful nature is spoken of as if it were a person that had passions and desires. AT: "their sinful nature, and the things they strongly want to do because of it" (See: Personification)

translationWords

- fruit, fruitful
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

- love, loves, loving, loved
- joy, joyful
- peace, peaceful
- good, goodness
- faith
- self-control
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- crucify, crucified
- flesh
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 5:25-26

UDB:

25 Since God's Spirit has enabled us to live in a new way, we should behave as the Spirit leads us. **26** We should not be proud about ourselves. We should not make each other angry. We should not envy each other.

ULB:

25 If we live by the Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit. **26** Let us not become conceited, provoking one another, envying one another.

translationNotes

If we live by the Spirit

"Since God's Spirit has caused us to be alive"

walk by the Spirit

"Walk" is a metaphor for living every day. AT: "allow the Holy Spirit to guide us so we do things that please and honor God" (See: Metaphor)

Let us

"We should"

translationWords

- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- walk, walks, walked, walking

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5 translationQuestions

Galatians 06 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Overall, this chapter serves as a conclusion to Paul's letter. It contains some concluding thoughts, which may not be as connected to the rest of the material contained in the letter. There are also some other issues that Paul wished to address in the church in Galatia.

Brothers

This chapter is addressed to Christians and this should be seen as a reference to Paul's Christian brothers and not his Jewish brothers.

Special concepts in this chapter

New Creation

This is a concept related to being born again. Those who are born again are said to be a new creation in Christ. To Paul, this is more significant than a person's ancestry. It also is related to the idea that the Christian has been given new life in Christ, and has a new nature in them after they come to faith in Christ. (See: born again, born of God, new birth and faith)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Flesh

This is a complex issue and it is possible that "flesh" is still a subject used in distinction to the "spirit." The person of the flesh is controlled by their sinful desires while the spiritual is controlled by the Spirit. Flesh is also used to refer to the physical body in this chapter. (See: flesh, sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning and spirit, spirits, spiritual)

Links:

- **Galatians 06:01 Notes**

Galatians 6:1-2

UDB:

1 My fellow believers, if you discover that a brother or sister is doing wrong, those of you whom God's Spirit is directing should gently correct that person. Furthermore, as you correct another person, you should be very careful so that you do not sin either. **2** When there are brothers or sisters who have problems, you should help each other. By doing that, you will do what Christ commands.

ULB:

1 Brothers, if someone is caught in any trespass, you who are spiritual should restore him in a spirit of gentleness. Be concerned about yourself, so you also may not be tempted. **2** Carry one another's burdens, and so fulfill the law of Christ.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Paul teaches believers how they should treat other believers and how God rewards.

Brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

if someone

"if anyone among you"

if someone is caught in any trespass

Possible meanings are 1) someone else found that person in the act. AT: "if someone is discovered in an act of sin" or 2) that person committed the sin without intending to do evil. AT: "if someone gave in and sinned"

you who are spiritual

"those of you who are guided by the Spirit" or "you who are living in the guidance of the Spirit"

restore him

"correct the person who sinned" or "exhort the person who sinned to return to a correct relationship with God"

in a spirit of gentleness

Possible meanings are 1) that the Spirit is directing the one who is offering correction or 2) "with an attitude of gentleness" or "in a kind way."

Be concerned about yourself

These words treat the Galatians as though they are all one person to emphasize that he is talking to each of them. AT: "Be concerned about yourselves" or "I say to each one of you, 'Be concerned about yourself' " (See: Forms of You)

so you also may not be tempted

This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that nothing will tempt you also to sin" (See: Active or Passive)

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- tempt, temptation
- burden
- fulfill, fulfilled

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:3-5

UDB:

3 I say this because people who think more highly of themselves than they should merely fool themselves. **4** Instead, each of you should constantly test and decide if you can approve what you yourself are doing and thinking. You can be proud because what you yourself have done is good, and not because what you have done is better than what anyone else has done. **5** I say this because you must each perform your own individual tasks.

ULB:

3 For if anyone thinks he is something when he is nothing, he deceives himself. **4** Each one should examine his own work, and then his reason to boast will be in himself alone and not in someone else. **5** For each one will carry his own load.

translationNotes

For

"Because." This indicates that the words that follow are why the Galatians should 1) "carry one other's burdens" (Galatians 6:2) or 2) be careful that they themselves are not tempted (Galatians 6:1) or 3) "not become conceited" (Galatians 5:26).

he is something

"he is someone important" or "he is better than others"

he is nothing

"he is not important" or "he is not better than others"

Each one should

"Each person must"

each one will carry his own load

"each person will be judged by his own work only" or "each person will be responsible for his own work only"

each one will

"each person will"

translationWords

- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- works, deeds, work, acts
- proud, pride, prideful
- burden

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:6-8

UDB:

[6] If fellow believers teach you the truth about God, then you should share your possessions with them. [7] You should not deceive yourselves. Remember that no one can deceive God. Just like a farmer will harvest exactly the kind of crop that he plants, God will pay back people according to what they have done. [8] God will punish eternally those who commit the sins that they wish to. But those who please God's Spirit will live forever with God because of what God's Spirit does for them.

ULB:

[6] The one who is taught the word must share all good things with the one who teaches. [7] Do not be deceived. God is not mocked, for whatever a man plants, that he will also gather in. [8] For he who plants seed to his own sinful nature, from the sinful nature will gather in destruction. The one who plants seed to the Spirit, from the Spirit will gather in eternal life from the Spirit.

translationNotes

The one

"The person"

word

Here this means everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."

for whatever a man plants, that he will also gather in

Planting represents doing things that end in some kind of result, and gathering in represents experiencing the results of what one has done. AT: "for just as a farmer gathers in the fruit of whatever kind of seeds he plants, so everyone experiences the results of whatever he does" (See: Metaphor)

whatever a man plants

Paul is not specifying males here. AT: "whatever a person plants" or "whatever someone plants" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

plants seed to his own sinful nature

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing sinful actions because of his sinful nature. AT: "plants seed according to what he wants because of his sinful nature" or "does the things he wants to do because of his sinful nature" (See: Metaphor)

will gather in destruction

God punishing the person is spoken of as if the person were harvesting a crop. AT: "will receive punishment for what he did" (See: Metaphor)

plants seed to the Spirit

Planting seeds is a metaphor for doing deeds that will have consequences later. In this case, the person is doing good actions because he is listening to God's Spirit. AT: "does the things God's Spirit loves" (See: Metaphor)

will gather in eternal life from the Spirit

"will receive eternal life as a reward from God's Spirit"

translationWords

- word, words
- good, goodness
- teacher, teachers, Teacher
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker
- sow, sower, plant
- harvest
- flesh
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- everlasting, eternal, eternity

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:9-10

UDB:

9 But we should not tire of doing what pleases God, because eventually, at the time that God has determined, we will receive a reward, if we do not stop doing the good things that we have been doing. **10** So whenever we have opportunities, we should do what is good to all people. But especially we should do what is good to all our fellow believers.

ULB:

9 Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the right time we will gather in a harvest, if we do not give up. **10** So then, as we have the opportunity, let us do good to all people, especially to those who belong to the household of faith.

translationNotes

Let us not become weary in doing good

"We should continue to do good"

doing good

doing good to others for their well-being

for at the right time

"for in due time" or "because at the time God has chosen"

So then

"As a result of this" or "Because of this"

especially ... to those

"most of all ... to those" or "in particular ... to those"

those who belong to the household of faith

"those who are members of God's family through faith in Christ"

translationWords

- reap, reaper
- harvest
- household
- faith

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:11-13

UDB:

11 I am now writing this last part of this letter to you in my own handwriting. Notice the large letters with which I am now writing. **12** Some Jewish believers want to circumcise you so that the other Jews will think highly of them for making converts to Judaism. But they are doing this just so that the others will not persecute them for believing that Christ died on the cross to save us. **13** The reason that I say this is that not even those people keep the law of God; instead, they want to circumcise you so they can boast that they have made more converts to the Jewish faith.

ULB:

11 See what large letters I write to you with my own hand. **12** Those who want to make a good impression in the flesh are trying to compel you to be circumcised. They do this only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ. **13** For not even those who circumcised themselves keep the law, but they want you to be circumcised so that they may boast about your flesh.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

As Paul closes this letter, he gives one more reminder that the law does not save and that they should remember the cross of Christ.

large letters

This can mean that Paul wants to emphasize 1) the statements that follow or 2) that this letter came from him.

with my own hand

Possible meanings are 1) Paul probably had a helper who wrote most of this letter as Paul told him what to write, but Paul himself wrote this last part of the letter or 2) Paul wrote the whole letter himself.

make a good impression

"cause others to think well of them" or "cause others to think that they are good people"

in the flesh

"with visible evidence" or "by their own efforts"

compel

"force" or "strongly influence"

only to avoid being persecuted for the cross of Christ

"so that the Jews will not persecute them for claiming that the cross of Christ alone is what saves people"

the cross

The cross here represents what Christ did for us when he died on the cross. AT: "the work Jesus did on the cross" or "the death and resurrection of Jesus" (See: Metonymy)

they want

"those people who are urging you to be circumcised want"

so that they may boast about your flesh

"so that they may be proud that they have added you to the people who try to keep the law"

translationWords

- flesh
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- cross
- Christ, Messiah
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:14-16

UDB:

14 I myself, however, desire very much never to boast about anything like that. The only thing I will be proud about is our Lord Jesus Christ and his dying on the cross. When he died on the cross, he made everything the unbelievers wish for to be nothing in my sight, and he made what I wish for to be nothing in their sight. **15** I will be very proud about that, because God does not care whether people are circumcised or not. Instead, he cares only that he changes them into new people. **16** May God give peace and act kindly toward all who live like this. These believers are the true nation of Israel that belongs to God!

ULB:

14 But may I never boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world. **15** For neither circumcision counts for anything nor uncircumcision, but what counts is a new creation. **16** To all who live according to this standard, peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God.

translationNotes

But may I never boast except in the cross

"I do not ever want to boast in anything other than the cross" or "May I boast only in the cross"

the world has been crucified to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "I think of the world as already dead" or "I treat the world like a criminal God has killed on a cross" (See: Active or Passive)

I to the world

The words "have been crucified" are understood from the phrase before this. AT: "and I have been crucified to the world" (See: Ellipsis)

I to the world

Possible meanings are 1) "the world thinks of me as already dead" or 2) "the world treats me like a criminal that God has killed on the cross"

the world

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the world, those who care nothing for God or 2) the things that those who care nothing for God think are important.

counts for anything

"is important to God"

a new creation

Possible meanings are 1) a new believer in Jesus Christ or 2) the new life of a believer.

peace and mercy be upon them, even upon the Israel of God

Possible meanings are 1) that believers in general are the Israel of God or 2) "may peace and mercy be upon Gentile believers and upon the Israel of God" or 3) "may peace be upon those who follow the rule, and may mercy be upon even the Israel of God."

translationWords

- proud, pride, prideful
- cross
- Lord
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- world, worldly
- crucify, crucified
- circumcise, circumcised, circumcision
- uncircumcised, uncircumcision
- create, creation, Creator
- peace, peaceful
- mercy, merciful
- Israel, Israelites
- God

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

Galatians 6:17-18

UDB:

17 I say that people have persecuted me for declaring the truth about Jesus, and as a result I have scars on my body, unlike your new teachers. So let no one trouble me about these matters again!

18 My fellow believers, may our Lord Jesus Christ kindly be good to all of you. Amen!

ULB:

17 From now on let no one trouble me, for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus.

18 May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit, brothers. Amen.

translationNotes

From now on

This can also mean "Lastly" or "As I end this letter."

let no one trouble me

Possible meanings are 1) Paul is commanding the Galatians not to trouble him, "I am commanding you this: do not trouble me," or 2) Paul is telling the Galatians that he is commanding all people not to trouble him, "I am commanding everyone this: do not trouble me," or 3) Paul is expressing a desire, "I do not want anyone to trouble me."

trouble me

Possible meanings are 1) "speak of these matters to me" or 2) "cause me hardship" or "give me hard work."

for I carry on my body the marks of Jesus

These marks were scars from people who beat and whipped Paul because they did not like him teaching about Jesus. AT: "for the scars on my body show that I serve Jesus"

May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit

"I pray that the Lord Jesus will be kind to your spirit"

brothers

See how you translated this in Galatians 1:2.

translationWords

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- grace, gracious
- Lord
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- brother, brothers

Links:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6 translationQuestions

translationQuestions

Galatians 1

How did Paul become an apostle?

Paul became an apostle through Jesus Christ and God the Father. [1:1]

From what have believers in Jesus Christ been delivered?

Believers in Jesus Christ have been delivered from this present evil age. [1:4]

With what is Paul amazed with the church in Galatia?

Paul is amazed that they have turned so quickly to a different gospel. [1:6]

How many true gospels are there?

There is only one true gospel, the gospel of Christ. [1:7]

What does Paul say should happen to anyone proclaiming a different gospel than the gospel of Christ?

Paul says anyone proclaiming a different gospel should be cursed. [1:8]

What does Paul say should happen to anyone proclaiming a different gospel than the gospel of Christ?

Paul says anyone proclaiming a different gospel should be cursed. [1:9]

Servants of Christ must seek the approval of whom first?

Servants of Christ must seek the approval of God first. [1:10]

How did Paul receive the knowledge of the gospel of Christ?

Paul received the gospel of Christ by revelation from Jesus Christ directly to himself. [1:12]

What was Paul doing in his life before he received the revelation of the gospel of Christ?

Paul was following Judaism zealously, persecuting the church of God. [1:13]

What was Paul doing in his life before he received the revelation of the gospel of Christ?

Paul was following Judaism zealously, persecuting the church of God. [1:14]

When did God choose Paul to be his apostle?

God was pleased to choose Paul from his mother's womb to be his apostle. [1:15]

For what purpose did God choose Paul as his apostle?

God chose Paul as his apostle so that Paul would proclaim Christ among the Gentiles. [1:16]

Where did Paul finally meet some of the other apostles?

Finally, Paul went to Jerusalem and met the apostles Cephas and James. [1:19]

What were the churches in Judea hearing about Paul?

The churches in Judea were hearing that Paul, who once persecuted the church, was now proclaiming the faith. [1:22]

What were the churches in Judea hearing about Paul?

The churches in Judea were hearing that Paul, who once persecuted the church, was now proclaiming the faith. [1:23]

Galatians 2

What did Paul do when he went up to Jerusalem after fourteen years?

Paul spoke privately to the leaders of the church, explaining to them the gospel that he was proclaiming. [2:1]

What was Titus, a Gentile, not required to do?

Titus was not required to be circumcised. [2:3]

What did the false brothers desire to do?

The false brothers desired to make Paul and his companions slaves to the law. [2:4]

Did the leaders of the church in Jerusalem change Paul's message?

No, they contributed nothing to Paul's message. [2:6]

To whom was Paul primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?

Paul was primarily sent to the uncircumcised to proclaim the gospel. [2:7]

To whom was Peter primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?

Peter was primarily sent to the circumcised to proclaim the gospel. [2:7]

To whom was Paul primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?

Paul was primarily sent to the uncircumcised to proclaim the gospel. [2:8]

To whom was Peter primarily sent to proclaim the gospel?

Peter was primarily sent to the circumcised to proclaim the gospel. [2:8]

How did the leaders in Jerusalem show their approval of Paul's ministry?

The leaders in Jerusalem gave Paul and Barnabus the right hand of fellowship to show their approval. [2:9]

What error did Peter make when he came to Antioch?

Peter stopped eating with the Gentiles because he feared the men who had been circumcised. [2:11]

What error did Peter make when he came to Antioch?

Peter stopped eating with the Gentiles because he feared the men who had been circumcised. [2:12]

What did Paul ask Cephas in front of everyone?

Paul asked Cephas how he could force Gentiles to live like Jews when Cephas was living like a Gentile. [2:14]

Paul said that no one is justified by what?

Paul said that no one is justified by the works of the law. [2:16]

How is a person justified before God?

A person is justified before God by faith in Christ Jesus. [2:16]

If someone returns to trying to follow the law after having faith in Christ, what does Paul say he has actually become?

Paul says he shows himself actually to be a law breaker. [2:18]

Who did Paul say now lived in him?

Paul said that Christ now lived in him. [2:20]

What does Paul say the Son of God did for him?

Paul says the Son of God loved him and gave himself for Paul. [2:20]

Galatians 3

How was Abraham considered righteous before God?

Abraham believed God and it was credited to him as righteousness. [3:6]

Who are the sons of Abraham?

Those who believe God are the sons of Abraham. [3:7]

The scripture foresaw that the Gentiles would be justified in what way?

The scripture foresaw that the Gentiles would be justified by faith. [3:8]

Those who rely on the works of the law to be justified are under what?

Those who rely on the works of the law to be justified are under a curse. [3:10]

How many people have been justified by God through the works of the law?

No one has been justified through the works of the law. [3:11]

Why did Christ redeem us by becoming a curse for us?

Christ redeemed us by becoming a curse for us so that the blessing upon Abraham might come to the Gentiles. [3:14]

Who was the "descendant" that was spoken of in the promise to Abraham?

The "descendant" spoken of in the promise to Abraham was Christ. [3:16]

Did the coming of the Jewish law 430 years after Abraham void the promise God made to Abraham?

No, the law did not void the promise made to Abraham. [3:17]

Why then was there the law?

The law came because of transgressions until Abraham's descendant came. [3:19]

What did the law in scripture imprison everyone under?

The law in scripture imprisoned everyone under sin. [3:22]

How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?

We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus. [3:23]

How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?

We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus. [3:24]

How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?

We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus. [3:25]

How are we released from the imprisonment of the law?

We are released from the imprisonment of the law by faith in Christ Jesus. [3:26]

Who has been clothed in Christ?

All who have been baptized into Christ have been clothed in Christ. [3:27]

What different kinds of persons are made one in Christ Jesus?

Jews, Greeks, slaves, free, male, and female are all made one in Christ Jesus. [3:28]

Galatians 4

How does the heir of an estate live while he is a child?

The heir lives under guardians and trustees until the time set by his father. [4:1]

How does the heir of an estate live while he is a child?

The heir lives under guardians and trustees until the time set by his father. [4:2]

What did God do at the right time in history?

God, at the right time, sent forth his Son to redeem those under the law. [4:4]

What did God do at the right time in history?

God, at the right time, sent forth his Son to redeem those under the law. [4:5]

How did God bring children who were under the law into his family?

God adopted as sons the children who were under the law. [4:5]

What does God send forth into the hearts of his children?

God sends forth the Spirit of his Son into the hearts of his children. [4:6]

Before we know God, to whom are we slaves?

Before we know God, we are slaves to the spirits that rule the world, who are not gods at all. [4:8]

Paul was perplexed that the Galatians were returning to what?

Paul was perplexed that the Galatians were returning again to the ruling spirits of the world. [4:9]

As he sees the Galatians turning back, what does Paul fear for them?

Paul fears that the Galatians will become slaves again, and that he has labored in vain over them. [4:9]

When Paul first came to the Galatians, what problem did he have?

When Paul first came to the Galatians, he had a physical illness. [4:13]

Despite Paul's problem, how did the Galatians receive him?

Despite Paul's problem, the Galatians received Paul as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus. [4:14]

Who are the false teachers in Galatia trying to separate?

The false teachers are trying to separate the Galatians from Paul. [4:17]

Under what are the false teachers trying to put the Galatians?

The false teachers are trying to put the Galatians back under the law. [4:21]

From which two kinds of women did Abraham have two sons?

Abraham had two sons, one from a slave woman and one from a free woman. [4:22]

Who is the symbolic mother of Paul and the believing Galatians?

The Jerusalem above, the free woman, is the symbolic mother of Paul and the believing Galatians. [4:26]

Are believers in Christ children of the flesh or children of the promise?

Believers in Christ are children of the promise. [4:28]

Who persecutes the children of the promise?

The children of the flesh persecute the children of the promise. [4:29]

What do the children of the slave woman inherit?

The children of the slave woman do not inherit along with the children of the free woman. [4:30]

Are believers in Christ children of the slave woman or children of the free woman?

Believers in Christ are children of the free woman. [4:31]

Galatians 5

For what purpose has Christ set us free?

For freedom Christ has set us free. [5:1]

What did Paul warn the Galatians would happen if they became circumcised?

Paul said that if the Galatians became circumcised, Christ would not benefit them in any way. [5:2]

What did Paul warn would happen to all the Galatians who would seek to be justified by following the law?

Paul warned that all the Galatians who would seek to be justified by following the law would be alienated from Christ and would fall away from grace. [5:4]

As opposed to circumcision and uncircumcised, what is the only thing that means anything in Christ Jesus?

In Christ Jesus, only faith working through love means anything. [5:6]

Of what is Paul confident regarding the one who has confused the Galatians about the gospel?

Paul is confident that the one who has confused the Galatians about the gospel will bear God's judgment. [5:10]

Paul says that proclaiming circumcision does what?

Paul says that proclaiming circumcision the stumbling block of the cross would be destroyed. [5:11]

How are believers not to use their freedom in Christ?

Believers are to not use their freedom in Christ as an opportunity for the flesh. [5:13]

How are believers to use their freedom in Christ?

Believers are to use their freedom in Christ to serve one another in love. [5:13]

The whole law is fulfilled in what one commandment?

The whole law is fulfilled in the commandment, "You must love your neighbor as yourself". [5:14]

How can believers not fulfill the lust of the flesh?

Believers can live by the Spirit and not fulfill the lust of the flesh. [5:16]

What two things are opposed to each other within the believer?

The Spirit and the flesh are opposed to each other within the believer. [5:17]

What are three examples of works of the flesh?

Three examples of works of the flesh are any three of the following list: sexual immorality, impurity, lustfulness, idolatry, sorcery, hostility, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, sectarian division, envy, drunkenness, and drunken riots. [5:20]

What are three examples of works of the flesh?

Three examples of works of the flesh are any three of the following list: sexual immorality, impurity, lustfulness, idolatry, sorcery, hostility, strife, jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, dissension, sectarian division, envy, drunkenness, and drunken riots. [5:21]

What will those who practice the works of the flesh not receive?

Those who practice the works of the flesh will not inherit the kingdom of God. [5:21]

What is the fruit of the Spirit?

The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, gentleness, and self-control. [5:22]

What is the fruit of the Spirit?

The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith, gentleness, and self-control. [5:23]

Those who belong to Christ Jesus have done what with the flesh and its passions?

Those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh and its passions. [5:24]

Galatians 6

What should those who are spiritual do if a man is caught in some transgression?

Those who are spiritual should restore that man in a spirit of gentleness. [6:1]

For what danger must those who are spiritual watch out?

Those who are spiritual must watch out that they are not also tempted. [6:1]

How do believers fulfill the law of Christ?

Believers fulfill the law of Christ by carrying one another's burdens. [6:2]

How can a person have something in himself to be proud of regarding his work?

A person can have something in himself to be proud of by examining his own work, without comparing himself to anyone else. [6:4]

What must one who is taught the word do with his teacher?

One who is taught the word must share all good things with his teacher. [6:6]

What happens to whatever a man spiritually plants?

Whatever a man spiritually plants he will harvest. [6:7]

What does a man harvest who plants to his own flesh?

A man who plants to his own flesh harvests corruption out of his flesh. [6:8]

What does a man harvest who plants to the Spirit?

A man who plants to the Spirit harvests out of the Spirit eternal life. [6:8]

If a believer does not give up and continues doing good, what will he receive?

A believer who continues doing good will reap a harvest. [6:9]

To whom should believers especially do good?

Believers should especially do good to those of the household of faith. [6:10]

What is the motivation of those who want to compel the believers to be circumcised?

Those who want to compel the believers to be circumcised do not want to be persecuted for the cross of Christ. [6:12]

Of what did Paul say he was proud?

Paul said that he was proud of the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ. [6:14]

Instead of circumcision or uncircumcision, what is important?

What is important is a new creation. [6:15]

Upon whom does Paul wish peace and mercy?

Paul wishes peace and mercy upon those who live by the rule of the new creation, and upon the Israel of God. [6:16]

What did Paul carry on his body?

Paul carried the marks of Jesus on his body. [6:17]

translationWords

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.

- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 4:21-23

adoption, adopt, adopted

Definition:

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
- To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
- The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: heir, inherit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Ephesians 01:5-6
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Romans 08:14-15
- Romans 08:23-25
- Romans 09:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5206

Uses:

- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4:3-5

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9

- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- Galatians 4:1-2

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,"I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising Godâ€¦
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 4:12-14

Antioch

Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

- The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
- The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
- Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also:Barnabas, Colossae, John Mark, Paul, province, Rome, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 06:5-6
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 11:25-26
- Galatians 02:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: G491

Uses:

- Galatians 2:11-12

apostle, apostles, apostleship

Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
- It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles'** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles'** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:6-8

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term "Arabian" is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham's son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- Acts 02:8-11
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Jeremiah 25:24-26
- Nehemiah 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 4:24-25

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being "baptized with the Holy Spirit" and "baptized with fire."
- The term "baptism" is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash," or "spiritually cleanse." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing," or "a spiritual washing."
- When it refers to suffering, "baptism" could also be translated as "a time of terrible suffering" or "a cleansing through severe suffering."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:37-39
- Acts 08:36-38
- Acts 09:17-19
- Acts 10:46-48
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.

- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

Uses:

- Galatians 3:27-29

Barnabas

Facts:

Barnabas was one of the early Christians who lived during the time of the apostles.

- Barnabas was from the Israelite tribe of Levi and was from the island of Cyprus.
- When Saul (Paul) became a Christian, Barnabas urged the other believers to accept him as a fellow believer.
- Barnabas and Paul traveled together to preach the good news about Jesus in different cities.
- His name was Joseph, but he was called "Barnabas," which means "son of encouragement."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christian, Cyprus, good news, Levite, Paul)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:36-37
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 13:1-3
- Acts 15:33-35
- Colossians 04:10-11
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Galatians 02:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

***46:08** Then a believer named **Barnabas** took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus. ***46:09** **Barnabas** and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church. I ***46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me **Barnabas** and Saul to do the work I have called them to do." So the church in Antioch prayed for **Barnabas** and Saul and placed their hands on them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G921

Uses:

- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:13-14

barren

Definition:

To be "barren" means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "barren" is used to refer to land, it could be translated as "not fertile" or "unfruitful" or "without plants."
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as "childless" or "not able to bear children" or "unable to conceive a child."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:26-27
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Job 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

Uses:

- Galatians 4:26-27

believe, believes, believed, belief

Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

(See also: faith, believer)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:23-24
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Job 09:16-18
- John 01:12-13
- Mark 01:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G544, G569, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:21-22

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as "to provide abundantly for" or "to be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9

blood

Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus' blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.

born again, born of God, new birth

Definition:

The term "born again" was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms "born of God" and "born of the Spirit" also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a "new birth" when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God's Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God's work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "born again" could include "born anew" or "born spiritually."
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term "new birth" might be translated as "spiritual birth."
- The phrase "born of God" could be translated as "caused by God to have new life like a new-born baby" or "given new life by God."
- In the same way, "born of the Spirit" could be translated as "given new life by the Holy Spirit" or "empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God's child" or "caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby."

(See also: Holy Spirit, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:9-10
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Peter 01:22-23
- John 03:3-4
- John 03:7-8
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

Uses:

- Galatians 06 General Notes

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 4:12-14
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 4:30-31
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:17-18

burden

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Genesis 49:14-15
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Matthew 23:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

Uses:

- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3-5

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- The term "called" is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, "He is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God knows a person's name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know your name and have chosen you."

(See also: pray)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- Galatians 1:6-7
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 5:13-15

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "child" is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term "children" is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
- children of the light
- children of obedience
- children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, "children of God" refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, promise, son, spirit, believer, beloved)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:27-29
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- Galatians 4:19-20
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 4:30-31

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Uses:

- Galatians 1:6-7
- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 6:11-13

church, churches, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term "church" refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God's word preached. The term "the Church" often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a "called out" assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter ("Church") to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone's home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the "church at Ephesus."
- In the Bible, "church" does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "church" could be translated as a "gathering together" or "assembly" or "congregation" or "ones who meet together."
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of "church" does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate "assembly" in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns.)

(See also: assembly, believer, Christian)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 14:23-26
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:15-17
- Ephesians 05:22-24
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Philippians 04:14-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 1:13-14
- Galatians 1:21-24

Cilicia

Facts:

Cilicia was a small Roman province located in the southeastern part of what is now the modern-day country of Turkey. It borders the Aegean Sea.

- The apostle Paul was a citizen from the city of Tarsus located in Cilicia.
- Paul spent several years in Cilicia after his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus.
- Some of the Jews from Cilicia were among those who confronted Stephen and influenced the people to stone him to death.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Paul, Stephen, Tarsus)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 27:3-6
- Galatians 01:21-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2791

Uses:

- Galatians 1:21-24

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision

Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: uncircumcised, covenant)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:44-45
- Acts 11:1-3
- Acts 15:1-2
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Genesis 17:9-11
- Genesis 17:12-14

- Joshua 05:2-3
- Philippians 03:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** ”You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, G203, G1986, G4059, G4061

Uses:

- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:11-12
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 6:11-13
- Galatians 6:14-16

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term "to command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- Galatians 5:13-15

condemn, condemns, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:19-22
- Job 09:27-29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:7-8
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:21-22
- Romans 05:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

Uses:

- Galatians 01 General Notes

covenant, covenants

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: new covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- Acts 07:6-8
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Joshua 24:24-26
- Luke 01:72-75
- Mark 14:22-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

Uses:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 4:24-25

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news "to all creation" means to preach the good news "to all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

se, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world was created.

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

Uses:

- Galatians 6:14-16

cross

Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Galatians 06:11-13
- John 19:17-18
- Luke 09:23-25
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Philippians 02:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called "the Skull" and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.

- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

Uses:

- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 6:11-13
- Galatians 6:14-16

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:22-24
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:33-34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

*39:11 But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!" ***39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. ***40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die. ***40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers. ***43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!" ***43:09** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus." ***44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

Uses:

- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 6:14-16

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- "Cursed be the day I was born" could also be translated as, "I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- James 03:9-10
- Numbers 22:5-6
- Psalms 109:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:13-14

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Assyria, believer, Syria)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- Acts 09:1-2
- Acts 09:3-4
- Acts 26:12-14
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 14:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1833, H1834, G1154

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, "to die" may be expressed as "to not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as "to pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "spiritual death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- Galatians 2:20-21

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called "deceit."

- Another term "deception" also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:13-15
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:62-64
- Micah 06:11-12

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- Galatians 6:3-5
- Galatians 6:6-8

deliver, deliverer, deliverance

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:8-10
- Acts 07:35-37
- Galatians 01:3-5
- Judges 10:10-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1350, H2020, H2502, H3052, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4560, H4672, H5337, H5338, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6308, H6403, H6405, H6413, H6475, H6487, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8000, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G859, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23-25
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

*02:09 "The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel." ***04:09** "I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**." ***05:10** "Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky." ***17:07** "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!" ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 3:27-29

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To "enslave" someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be "enslaved" or "in bondage" means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To "enslave" also means to take away a person's freedom.
- Another word for "bondage" is "slavery."
- In a figurative way, human beings are "enslaved" to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve others" or "put under the control of others."
- The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "under the control of."

(See also: free, righteous, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:3-5
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

Uses:

- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:24-25

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: forever, life)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Acts 13:46-47
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21
- Romans 05:20-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5703, H5769, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166

Uses:

- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 6:6-8

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- 3 John 01:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 5:22-24

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6:9-10

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "to fear" can be translated as "to be afraid" or "to deeply respect" or "to revere" or "to be in awe of."
- The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17-18
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- Galatians 4:10-11

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 John 01:7-8
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 4:21-23
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Galatians 6:11-13

fool, fools, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
- Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:1-3
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 25:7-9
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

Uses:

- Galatians 3:1-3

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression "to set someone free" or "to free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression "to set free" could be translated as "to cause to be free" or "to rescue from slavery" or "to release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G572, G629, G630, G859, G558, G572, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

Uses:

- Galatians 4:21-23
- Galatians 4:26-27
- Galatians 4:30-31
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:13-15

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term "fruitful" always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term "fruitful" is also used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces–"that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,"fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."

- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

Uses:

- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:22-24

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:20-22
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, "See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be **fulfilled**."
- **43:05** "This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Uses:

- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 6:1-2

Galatia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Asia, believer, Cilicia, good news, Paul, works)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- 1 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1

Gentile, Gentiles

Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
- The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
- Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 02:30-32
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:11-12
- Galatians 2:13-14
- Galatians 2:15-16

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:13-14

glorify, glorifies

Definition:

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means "to give glory to."

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: exalt, glory, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Acts 03:13-14
- John 12:27-29
- Luke 18:42-43
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 08:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3513, H6286, G1392, G1740, G4888

Uses:

- Galatians 1:21-24

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

- Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression "to glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

(See also: glorify)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- Acts 07:1-3
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 02:8-9
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3519, H3520, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
- Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, idol, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:9-10
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 4:12-14
- Galatians 6:14-16

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 02:22-23
- 1 John 03:1-3
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 23:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 1:3-5

god, gods, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, idol, demon, image)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:43
- Acts 19:26-27
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Genesis 35:1-3
- Isaiah 44:20
- Psalms 081:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5236, H8267, G2299

Uses:

- Galatians 4:8-9

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term "gospel" literally means "good news" and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God's salvation for people through Jesus' sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, "good news" is usually translated as "gospel" and is also used in phrases such as, the "gospel of Jesus Christ," the "gospel of God" and the "gospel of the kingdom."

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, "good message" or "good announcement" or "God's message of salvation" or "the good things God teaches about Jesus."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, "good news of" could include, "good news/message about" or "good message from" or "the good things God tells us about" or "what God says about how he saves people."

(See also: kingdom, sacrifice, salvation)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14-15
- Philippians 02:22-24
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!"
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord's favor."
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 1:6-7
- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:13-14
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 4:12-14

good, goodness

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 6:6-8

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression "to find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5

- Galatians 1:6-7
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 6:17-18

Greek, Grecian

Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Gentile, Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:28-30
- Acts 11:19-21
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:9-11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35-36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

Uses:

- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 3:27-29

Hagar

Facts:

Hagar was an Egyptian woman who was Sarai's personal slave.

- When Sarai was not able to bear children, she gave Hagar to her husband Abram to have a child by him.
- Hagar conceived and gave birth to Abram's son Ishmael.
- God watched over Hagar when she was in distress in the desert and promised to bless her descendants.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, Ishmael, Sarah, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:24-25
- Genesis 16:1-4
- Genesis 21:8-9
- Genesis 25:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

*05:01 So Abram's wife, Sarai, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, **Hagar**. Marry her also so she can have a child for me." ***05:02 Hagar** had a baby boy, and Abram named him Ishmael.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1904

Uses:

- Galatians 4:24-25

hang

Definition:

The term "hang" means to suspend something or someone above the ground.

- Death by hanging typically is done by tying a rope that is tied around a person's neck and sustending him from an elevated object, like a tree limb. Judas killed himself by hanging.
- Although Jesus died while hanging on a wooden cross, there was nothing around his neck: the soldiers suspended him by nailing his hands (or wrists) and his feet to the cross.
- To hang someone always refers to the way of killing someone by hanging them with a rope around their neck.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 17:23
- Acts 10:39-41
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Genesis 40:20-23
- Matthew 27:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2614, H3363, H8518, G519

Uses:

- Galatians 3:13-14

harvest

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word "harvest" can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person's spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb "to harvest" could be translated as, "to gather in" or "to pick up" or "to collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:10-11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:9-10
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

Uses:

- Galatians 6:6-8
- Galatians 6:9-10

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:16-18
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:6-7

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10

heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Genesis 15:1-3
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:13-14
- Mark 12:6-7
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:6-7

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 5:25-26
- Galatians 6:6-8

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 07:33-34
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 07:6
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** ”You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** ”If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** ”Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** ”So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians

household

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:9-10

hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term "hypocrite" refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term "hypocrisy" refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like "two-faced" that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate "hypocrite" could include "fraud" or "pretender" or "arrogant, deceitful person."
- The term "hypocrisy" could be translated by, "deception" or "fake actions" or "pretending."

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13-14
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15-16
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

Uses:

- Galatians 2:13-14

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

(See also: false god, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 15:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Romans 02:21-22

Examples from the Bible stories:

*13:05 "Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God." ***13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! ***14:03** "You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me." ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. ***19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:19-21

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
- Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:
- "who belong to Christ"
- "because you believe in Christ"
- "because Christ has saved us"
- "in service to the Lord"
- "relying on the Lord"
- "because of what the Lord has done."
- People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:4-6
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Timothy 01:1-2
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Galatians 02:17-19
- Philemon 01:4-7
- Revelation 01:9-11

- Romans 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

Uses:

- Galatians 1:21-24
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 3:27-29

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The "inheritance" is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God's people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to "inherit the land." This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will "inherit salvation" and "inherit eternal life." It is also expressed as, "inherit the kingdom of God." This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will "inherit glory" and righteous people will "inherit good things."
- To "inherit the promises" means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who "inherit the wind" or "inherit folly." This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- When God's people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as "valued ones belonging to him."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions" or "person chosen to receive (God's) spiritual possessions or blessings."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "blessings from God" or "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, ”Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, ”Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:03** ”There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ’Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 5:19-21

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name "Isaac" means "he laughs." When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham's faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, forever, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

*05:04 "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**." ***05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham's faith by saying, "Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me." ***05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**. ***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac.** ***06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:28-29

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 13:23-25
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:28-31
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 27:9-10
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

*08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'" ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:14-16

James (brother of Jesus)

Facts:

James was a son of Mary and Joseph. He was one of Jesus' younger half-brothers.

- Jesus' other half-brothers were named Joseph, Judas, and Simon.
- During Jesus' lifetime, James and his brothers did not believe that Jesus was the Messiah.
- Later, after Jesus was raised from the dead, James believed in him and became a leader of the church in Jerusalem.
- The New Testament book of James is a letter that James wrote to Christians who had fled to other countries to escape persecution.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, Christ, church, Judas the son of James, persecute)

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:18-20
- Galatians 02:9-10
- James 01:1-3
- Jude 01:1-2
- Mark 09:1-3
- Matthew 13:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:11-12

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:4-5
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Galatians 4:26-27

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 1 John 04:15-16
- 1 Timothy 01:1-2
- 2 Peter 01:1-2
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 10:36-38
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Luke 24:19-20

- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 2:15-16

- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 4:12-14
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 6:14-16
- Galatians 6:17-18

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:9-11
- John 02:13-14
- Matthew 28:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:9-11
- John 02:13-14
- Matthew 28:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:13-14
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 3:27-29

John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus' twelve apostles and one of Jesus' closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus' life, John referred to himself as "the disciple whom Jesus loved." This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, reveal, James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

*36:01 One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and **John** with him. (The disciple named **John** was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.\ ***44:01** One day, Peter and **John** were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.\ ***44:06** The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and **John** were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.\ ***44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and **John** to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and **John**, "By what power did you heal this crippled man?"\ ***44:09** The leaders were shocked that Peter and **John** spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and **John**, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 2:9-10

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

(See also: rejoice)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 3 John 01:1-4
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- James 01:1-3
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Philemon 01:4-7
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Romans 15:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."

- **34:04** ''The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.''
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2304, H2305, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5970, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2167, G2744, G3685, G4640, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- Galatians 5:22-24

Judaism, Jewish religion

Definition:

The term "Judaism" refers to the religion practiced by the Jews. It is also referred to as the "Jewish religion."

- In the Old Testament, the term "Jewish religion" is used, while in the New Testament, the term "Judaism" is used.
- Judaism includes all the Old Testament laws and instructions that God gave to the Israelites to obey. It also includes the customs and traditions that have been added to the Jewish religion over time.
- When translating, the term "Jewish religion" or "religion of the Jews" can be used in both the Old and New Testaments.
- "Judaism," however should only be used in the New Testament, since the term did not exist before that time.

(See also: Jew, law)

Bible References:

- Galatians 01:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:13-14

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 02:8-11
- Acts 09:31-32
- Acts 12:18-19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 04:42-44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:1-3
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:21-24

justify, justification

Definition:

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, righteous)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:38-39
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:10-12
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Genesis 44:16-17
- James 02:21-24
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Romans 04:1-3
- Titus 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6663, G1344, G1345, G1347

Uses:

- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:3-4

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23-24
- Colossians 04:10-11
- John 03:3-4
- Luke 07:27-28
- Luke 10:8-9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:9-10

- Romans 14:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:02** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

Uses:

- Galatians 5:19-21

labor pains, in labor

Definition:

A woman who is "in labor" is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called "labor pains."

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: labor, last day)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:19-20
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Isaiah 13:6-8
- Jeremiah 13:20-21
- Psalms 048:4-6
- Romans 08:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:19-20

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or "to work hard."

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:7-9
- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:4-6
- John 04:37-38
- Luke 10:1-2
- Matthew 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:10-11

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
- all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:5-6
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- Romans 03:19-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 4:3-5

- Galatians 4:21-23
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 6:11-13

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, "life" could be translated as "spiritual life" or "eternal life," depending on the context.
- The concept of "spiritual life" could also be translated as "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 5:25-26

Lord

Facts:

The term "Lord" refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULB and UDB, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, Jesus, lord, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Jude 01:5-6
- Lamentations 02:1-2

- Luke 01:30-33
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 06:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 5:9-10
- Galatians 6:14-16
- Galatians 6:17-18

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.
8. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
- In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 John 03:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 5:22-24

lust

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or "to strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase "to lust after" could be translated as "to wrongly desire" or "to think immorally about" or "to immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, idol)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 2 Timothy 02:22-23
- Galatians 05:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:19-21

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."
- Related words include "marvelous" (amazing, wonderful), "amazement," and "astonishment."
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28-29
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- Galatians 1:6-7

mediator

Definition:

A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "mediator" could be "go-between person" or "reconciler" or "person who brings peace."
- Compare this term with how the term "priest" is translated. It is best if the term "mediator" is translated differently.

(See also: priest, reconcile)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:5-7
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Hebrews 08:6-7
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Luke 12:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 3:19-20

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
- The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
- To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- Hebrews 10:28-29
- James 02:12-13
- Luke 06:35-36
- Matthew 09:27-28
- Philippians 02:25-27
- Psalms 041:4-6
- Romans 12:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, "What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?" He replied, "The one who was **merciful** to him."
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, "No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you."
- **34:09** "But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, 'God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- Galatians 6:14-16

mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker

Definition:

The terms "mock," ridicule," and "scoff at" all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people's words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term "scoff at" can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A "mocker" is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:3-4
- Acts 02:12-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 09:23-24
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:27-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

*21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah. ***39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, "He deserves to die!" Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him. ***39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!" ***40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God?" ***40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you."

\

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:6-8

neighbor

Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:13-15
- James 02:8-9
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:56-58
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Matthew 22:39-40

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:13-15

Paul, Saul

Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:1-3
- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 13:9-10
- Galatians 01:1-2
- Philemon 01:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:06** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.
- **46:01** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:02** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul**! **Saul**! Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:05** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.

- **46:06** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:09** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:01** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 5:1-2

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

*15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

*15:12 Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. ***50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 6:14-16

persecute, persecution

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 13:50-52
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:29-31
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:6-7

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!"
- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:13-14
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 5:11-12

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, apostle)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:11-12
- Luke 22:56-58
- Mark 03:13-16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14-15
- Matthew 14:28-30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

*28:09 Peter said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?" ***29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?" ***31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!" ***36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him. ***38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times." ***38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest. ***43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins." ***44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:11-12
- Galatians 2:13-14

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 1:21-24
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 4:12-14
- Galatians 5:11-12

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:8-10
- James 01:12-13
- Numbers 30:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children."Â�
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's **promise**.
- **05:04** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a sonâ€"he will be the son of **promise**."
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Uses:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 4:21-23

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
- The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
- In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
- To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
- The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
- The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12-14
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19-20
- Luke 01:50-51

Examples from the Bible stories:

*04:02 They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. ***34:10** Then Jesus said, "I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector's prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:3-5
- Galatians 6:14-16

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or "to appoint" or "to bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1

reap, reaper

Definition:

The term "reap" means to harvest crops such as grain. A "reaper" is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God's family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person's actions, as in the saying "a man reaps what he plants." (See: Metaphor)
- Other ways to translate "to reap" and "reaper" could include "to harvest" and "harvester" (or "person who harvests").

(See also: good news, harvest)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:29-30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:9-10

receive

Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 4:12-14

redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

To "redeem" and "redemption" refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. "Redemption" is the action of doing that. A "redeemer" is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word "ransom" also refers to this practice.
- If someone's land had been sold, a relative of that person could "redeem" or "buy back" that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people's sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "redeem" could also be translated as "buy back" or "pay to free (someone)" or "ransom."
- The term "redemption" could be translated as "ransom" or "freedom payment" or "the buying back."
- The words "ransom" and "redeem" have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word "ransom," however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Luke 02:36-38
- Ruth 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085, H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069

Uses:

- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:3-5

reject

Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:12-14

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation" is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

Uses:

- Galatians 1:11-12
- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 2:1-2

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression "right hand" refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting "at the right hand of" God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To "serve at the right hand" of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term "right hand" literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus' right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term "right hand" does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression "at the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of" or "in the place of honor beside" or "in the position of strength" or "ready to help."
- Ways to translate "with his right hand" could include "with authority" or "using power" or "with his amazing strength."
- The figurative expression "his right hand and his mighty arm" uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be "his amazing strength and mighty power." (See: parallelism)
- The expression "their right hand is falsehood" could be translated as, "even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies" or "their place of honor is corrupted by deception" or "they use lies to make themselves powerful."

(See also: accuse, evil, honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:32-33
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Lamentations 02:3-4

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- Galatians 2:9-10

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

(See also: good, holy, evil, just, faithful)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Acts 03:13-14
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Psalms 037:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 5:5-8

run, running

Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: *"To run in such a way as to win the prize"– refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win.* "To run in the path of your commands" – means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands. *"To run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods.* "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. *Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow." The border of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country."* Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry." *The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 05:5-8
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Proverbs 01:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 5:5-8

save, saves, saved, safe

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, salvation, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Acts 02:20-21
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Luke 08:36-37
- Micah 06:3-5
- Psalm 080:1-3
- Romans 10:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 3:21-22

self-control

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
- 2 Peter 01:5-7
- 2 Timothy 03:1-4
- Galatians 05:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:22-24

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for "servant" can also mean "slave" and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

(See: Metaphor)

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, serve)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

Examples from the Bible stories:

*06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** ”I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt.” ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, ”O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**.” ***29:03** ”Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, ’Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.’” ***35:06** ”All my father’s **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.” ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, ”These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, ”A **servant** is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 4:1-2
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 4:21-23
- Galatians 4:30-31

serve, service

Definition:

The term "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for."
- When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- The term "service" refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a "meeting" of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- "To serve God" can be translated as "to worship and obey God" or "to do the work that God has commanded."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: covenant, law, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:13-15

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- "To sin" could also be translated as "to disobey God" or "to do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 06 General Notes

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as "Mount Horeb."

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: desert, Egypt, Horeb, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:29-30
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Galatians 04:24-25
- Leviticus 27:34
- Numbers 01:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

*13:01 After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. ***13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast. ***13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God. ***15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 4:24-25

Son of God, Son

Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit. Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God,", especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:9-10
- Acts 09:20-22
- Colossians 01:15-17
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- John 03:16-18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Revelation 02:18-19
- Romans 08:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- **24:09** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**."?
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God**."
- **37:05** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

Uses:

- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:6-7

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
- The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:6-7

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

"Sorcery" or "witchcraft" refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A "sorcerer" is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms "sorcery" and "witchcraft" could also be translated as "evil spirit power" or "casting spells."
- Possible ways to translated "sorcerer" could include "worker of magic" or "person who casts spells" or "person who does miracles using evil spirit power."
- Note that "sorcery" has a different meaning than the term "divination," which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, idol, magic, sacrifice, worship)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Exodus 07:11-13
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Revelation 09:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:19-21

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "sow" means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A "sower" is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to "sow" could also be translated as to "plant." Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate "sower" could include "planter" or "farmer" or "person who plants seeds."
- In English, "sow" is only used for planting seeds, but the English word "plant" can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could also be translated as "just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person's good actions will bring a good result and a person's evil actions will bring an evil result."

(See also: evil, good, reap)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:6-8
- Luke 08:4-6
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:3-6
- Matthew 13:18-19
- Matthew 25:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 6:6-8

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 04 General Notes
- Galatians 06 General Notes
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:17-18

stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a "stumbling block" or "stone of stumbling" can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as "stone that causes stumbling" or "something that causes someone to not believe" or "obstacle that causes doubt" or "obstacle to faith" or "something that causes someone to sin."

(See also: stumble, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:22-23
- Galatians 05:11-12
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Romans 09:32-33

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:11-12

Syria

Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, commander, Damascus, descendant, Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, persecute, prophet)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:22-23
- Acts 15:39-41
- Acts 20:1-3
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:21-24

teacher, teachers, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18-20
- James 03:1-2
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:39-40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?"
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But **Teacher**," the disciples answered, "Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!"
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, **Teacher**," and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

Uses:

- Galatians 6:6-8

tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is "tempting God" is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called "testing God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "tempt" can be translated as, "try to cause to sin" or "entice" or "cause a desire to sin."
- Ways to translate "temptations" could include, "things that tempt" or "things that entice someone to sin" or "things that cause desire to do something wrong.
- "To tempt God" could be translated as "to put God to the test" or "to test God" or "to try God's patience" or "to cause God to have to punish" or "to stubbornly keep disobeying God."

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:14-16
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 04:1-2
- Luke 11:3-4
- Matthew 26:39-41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Then Satan came to Jesus and **tempted** him to sin.
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to Satan's **temptations**, so Satan left him.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into **temptation**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

Uses:

- Galatians 6:1-2

Titus

Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

- A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
- In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
- In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: appoint, believer, church, circumcise, Crete, elder, encourage, instruct, minister)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Galatians 02:1-2
- Galatians 02:3-5
- Titus 01:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:3-5

tradition

Definition:

The term "tradition" refers to a custom or practice that has been kept over time and which is passed down to people in later generations.

- Often in the Bible the word "traditions" referred to teachings and practices that people made, not God's laws. The expression "tradition of men" or "human tradition" makes this clear.
- Phrases such as "traditions of the elders" or "traditions of my fathers" referred specifically to Jewish customs and practices that Jewish leaders over time had added to the laws God gave to the Israelites through Moses. Even though these added traditions had not come from God, people thought they had to obey them in order to be righteous.
- The apostle Paul used the term "tradition" in a different way to refer to teachings about Christian practice that came from God and that he and other apostles had taught new believers.
- In modern times, there are many Christian traditions that are not taught in the Bible, but rather are the result of historically accepted customs and practices. These traditions should always be evaluated in light of what God teaches us in the Bible.

(See also: apostle, believer, Christian, ancestor, generation, Jew, law, Moses)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Colossians 02:8-9
- Galatians 01:13-14
- Mark 07:2-4
- Matthew 15:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 1:13-14

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term "transgression" refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To "transgress" is to commit a "transgression."

- Figuratively, "to transgress" can also be described as "to cross a line," that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms "transgression," "sin," "iniquity," and "trespass" all include the meaning of acting against God's will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- "To trangress" could be translated as "to sin" or "to disobey" or "to rebel."
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean "sin" or "transgress" or "trespass," it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Galatians 03:19-20
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

Uses:

- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: Abraham, circumcise)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:17-20
- Acts 11:1-3
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Ephesians 02:11-12
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Ezekiel 32:24-25
- Jeremiah 09:25-26
- Judges 15:17-18
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Romans 02:25-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564

Uses:

- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 6:14-16

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of "walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 Kings 02:1-4
- Colossians 02:6-7
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 13:8-11
- Micah 04:2-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- Galatians 5:25-26

will of God

Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term "to will" means "to determine" or "to desire."

Translation Suggestions:

- The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

(See also: prophet, word, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 4:30-31

word, words

Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
- Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see word of God

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: word of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- Galatians 6:6-8

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "works," "deeds," and "acts" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term "work" refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person's "work" can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as "working."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
- When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- The term "work" can also have the broader meaning of "service" or "ministry." For example, the expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as, "what you do for the Lord."
- The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
- The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:11-12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians
- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Galatians 6:3-5

world, worldly

Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…"
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, ungodly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 John 04:4-6
- 1 John 05:4-5
- John 01:29-31
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

Uses:

- Galatians 6:14-16

written

Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- Revelation 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:13-14

yeast, leaven

Definition:

"Leaven" is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. "Yeast" is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as "yeast," which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term "leaven" or "yeast" is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term "leaven" is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as "leaven" or "substance that causes dough to rise" or "expanding agent." The word "rise" could be expressed as "expand" or "get bigger" or "puff up."
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, "leavening," this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:5-8
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:20-21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:5-8

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:9-10

yoke

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term "yoke" is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term "yokefellow" to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as "fellow worker" or "fellow servant" or "coworker."
- The term "yoke" is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, "oppressive burden" or "heavy load" or "bond," depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, oppress, persecute, servant)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:10-11
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Genesis 27:39-40
- Isaiah 09:4-5
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Philippians 04:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Galatians 5:1-2

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:30-31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3-5
- Galatians 04:17-18
- Isaiah 63:15-16
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:6-7
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

Uses:

- Galatians 1:13-14
- Galatians 4:17-18

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

> ...*from childhood you have known the sacred writings* ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

   - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
     - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
   - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
     - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
     - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
     - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
   - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
     - Today the people in this house have been saved...
     - Today God has saved the people in this house...
   - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

○ The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
    ○ He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:21-22

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: My father built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down … (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

   - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

  ○ The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

   - **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
     ○ It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
     ○ It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.

   - **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
     ○ He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:14-16

Jesus knew that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds make nests in which to rest. So Jesus **assumed** that his audience would **know** this **knowledge**.

> *The birds of the sky have nests*

This is **implicit information** that the birds rest in their nests.

> *but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head*

Jesus was speaking about himself as the Son of Man. He also **assumed** that his audience **knew** that this means that he had no house and no place to rest.

> Then, behold, there came a leper to him. He **bowed down** before him, saying, "Lord, **if you are willing**, you can **make me clean.**" (Matthew 8:2 ULB)

The man **assumed the knowledge** that leprosy was a severe disease. He also **assumed the knowledge** that people with leprosy were considered unclean by their society and by God, because God considered them unclean until their leprosy was healed. This man knew that Jesus had the power to heal people. So the **implicit information** was that, if Jesus would heal him, then God would no longer consider him unclean. He was asking Jesus to heal him. By this, he also **assumed the knowledge** that Jesus had the power to heal him and would make him physically clean, and therefore ceremonially and spiritually clean as well.

> *It will be more tolerable for the land of Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. But you, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? You will be brought down to Hades.* (Matthew 11:22-23 ULB)

Jesus **assumed** that his audience **knew** that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also assumed that his audience **knew** that the people he was talking to (Capernaum) were also sinning. He assumed that they thought that, because they were the people of God, they would not be judged for their sin.

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

    -   **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
        -   Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
    -   **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
        -   … it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
            -   ◇ Or:
        -   … it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
    -   **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
        -   Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

    -   **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
        -   Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
    -   **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
        -   At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

○ At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Galatians 01 General Notes
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 2:11-12
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:13-15

Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "unhappy," "impossible," and "useless."

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of "not."

> It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

> And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

> Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one." It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one." The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone."
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent."
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent."

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> … so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means "so that they will be fruitful."

> All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

   - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
     - "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."
   - **… so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
     - "… so that they may be fruitful."

2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely."

   - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished …** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
     - "Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished …"
   - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
     - "All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made."

Uses:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:1-2

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

> ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because "sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

> ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight." (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

   - **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
     - ○ ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
   - **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight."** (Luke 18:40-41)
     - ○ ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight."
   - **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
     - ○ He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

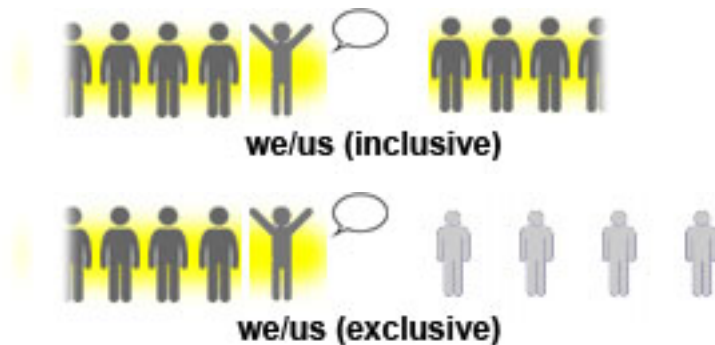- Galatians 4:30-31
- Galatians 6:14-16

Exclusive and Inclusive "We"

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive "we"?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we:" an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

we/us (inclusive)

we/us (exclusive)

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> They said, "We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> ... the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Uses:

- Galatians 2:15-16

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 2:13-14
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:15-16
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 4:26-27
- Galatians 5:13-15
- Galatians 6:1-2

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

> It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
  - ○ You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
- **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
  - ○ Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.

2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

   - **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
     - ○ She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

   - **… she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
     - ○ … she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

   - **… a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - ○ … a young man named Paul[1] The footnote would look like:
       - ◇ [1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
   - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
     - ○ But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

   - **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
     - ○ a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

◇ [1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
  - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
  - It came about in Iconium that Paul[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
    - ◇ [1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians

Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

"If the sun stopped shining…", "What if the sun stopped shining…", "Suppose the sun stopped shining…", "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situations in the past

   "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

   Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died." (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

1. Hypothetical situations in the present

   Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

   Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

1. Hypothetical situation in the future

   Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

> The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 02 General Notes
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:11-12

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, "You are telling me a lie")
- Do not push the envelope (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme")
- This house is under water (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value")
- We are painting the town red (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
> (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

   - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
     - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
   - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
     - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
   - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
     - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

   - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
     - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
   - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
     - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 5:16-18

Inclusive "We"

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive "we"?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

we/us (inclusive)
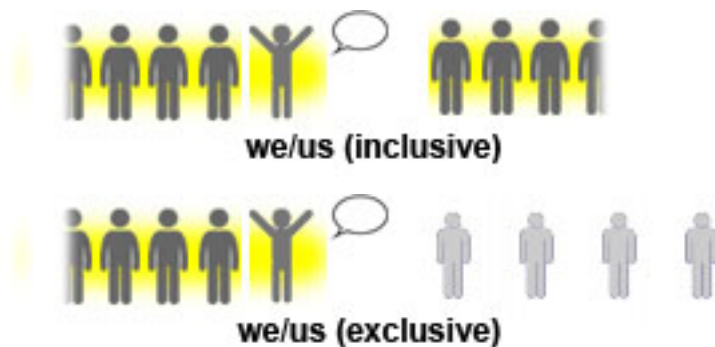
we/us (exclusive)

Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> … the shepherds said one to each other, "Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Uses:

- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 3:21-22

- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 5:5-8

Irony

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

> How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
> "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

  - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
  - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)

  - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- ○ You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

- **"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

  - ○ 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

  - Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Uses:

- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 5:3-4

Litotes

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are "no," "not," "none," and "never." The opposite of "good" is "bad." Someone could say that something is "not bad" to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

> Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULB)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are not the least among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULB)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

   - **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless.** (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULB)
     - ”For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”
   - **Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.** (Acts 12:18 ULB)
     - ”Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
     - ”Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

Uses:

- Galatians 1:18-20
- Galatians 2:20-21

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the "image") stands for another concept (the "topic"). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is "the girl I love," and the image is "a red rose." The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form "tells" is a metaphor for the past tense form "told," because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: "live" metaphors, "dead" metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
> (Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, 'Go and tell that fox...,'" where "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are "table leg," "family tree," "leaf" meaning a page in a book, and "crane" meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably "heal" meaning "repair," and "sick" meaning "spiritually powerless because of sin."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The heat is going *down*," and "The stock market *took a tumble*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patternsand the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his "love") is the **topic**, and "red rose" is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose's beauty is not identical to a woman's beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker's message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

> Jesus said to them. "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and
> he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is "I," and the **image** is "bread." Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed break every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is "you") with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are "we" and "you," and the images are "clay and "potter." The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."
> The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread."
> (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

    - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
      - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.

2. If the metaphor seems to be a "live" metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

    - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
      - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

   - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand."
     - "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand."

4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.

   - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
     - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
   - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
     - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick.

6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
  - I will make you become people who gather men.
  - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Galatians 1:6-7
- Galatians 2:1-2
- Galatians 2:3-5
- Galatians 2:9-10
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Galatians 3:23-26
- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 3:27-29
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 4:19-20
- Galatians 4:19-20
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Galatians 4:28-29
- Galatians 05 General Notes
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:11-12
- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 5:25-26
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Galatians 6:6-8

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

> and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

> Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> … who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

   - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
     - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

   - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
     - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
     - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
   - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
     - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.### Uses:

- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 1:3-5
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:11-12
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:10-12
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:6-7
- Galatians 5:1-2
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Galatians 5:5-8
- Galatians 6:11-13

Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> ... The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds ... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man."

> He will not be rich; his wealth will not last ... (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He."

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> ...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich," and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

    - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
        ○ The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
    - **Blessed are the meek …** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
        ○ Blessed are people who are meek …

Uses:

- Galatians 3:10-12

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as "five" or as numerals, such as "5." Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.

   - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

   - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

   - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

4. Combine words for large numbers.

   - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

   - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Galatians 3:17-18

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

   - **… sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
     - … sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

   - **… sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word "as."
     - … sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

   - **… even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the "wind and the sea as if they are able to hear" and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
     - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:21-22
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Galatians 5:16-18
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Galatians 5:22-24
- Galatians 5:22-24

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used theis question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden… (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.

   - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
     - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
   - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
     - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

   - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
     - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...”
   - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
     - You should not insult God's high priest!
   - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
     - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
   - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
     - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

   - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
     - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your langauge what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
  - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
  - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Galatians 1:8-10
- Galatians 2:13-14
- Galatians 2:17-19
- Galatians 03 General Notes
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:1-3
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:4-5
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 4:21-23
- Galatians 5:11-12

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No." Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes."

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
     - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
     - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
     - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
     - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

   - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
   - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
     - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- Galatians 2:9-10

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> the Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful …?" (Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

   - **"My soul exalts the Lord."** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
     - "I exalt the Lord."
   - **…the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ○ ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
  - ○ I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Galatians 2:15-16
- Galatians 4:24-25

Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10]See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11][1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> [53][Then every man went to his own house.... [11]She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."][2]

[2]The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- [14]**He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."** [16][1]

    - [1]**The best ancient copies omit v. 16.** *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.

    - [14]He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." [16][1]
        - [1]The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

    - [14]He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. [16]If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]
        - [1]Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Uses:

- Introduction to Galatians

Translating Son and Father

This page answers the question: *Why are these concepts important in referring to God?*

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible. The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and... a voice came out of the heavens saying, "This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULB)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus said, "I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,... no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son" (Matthew 11:25-27 ULB) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULB)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

> The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULB)

> I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULB)

> ... no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULB)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you... I glorified you on the earth,... Now Father, glorify me... with the glory that I had with you before the world was created." (John 17:1-5 ULB)

> But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULB)

Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? (John 14:9 ULB)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are essentially the same (they are both God), just as a human father and son are essentially the same, both human and sharing the same characteristics.

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities that your language has to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in translationWords for help translating "Father" and "Son.")### Uses:

- Galatians 1:15-17
- Galatians 2:20-21
- Galatians 4:3-5
- Galatians 4:6-7

When Masculine Words Include Women

This page answers the question: *How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*

In some parts of the Bible, the words "men", "brothers" and "sons" refer only to men. In other parts of the Bible, those words include both men and women. When the writer meant both men and women, translators need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says 'brothers' when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his", but it is not limited to males.

> A wise child makes his father rejoice
> but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

> We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULB)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24-26 ULB)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.' (Mark 22:24 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

   - **The wise man dies just like the fool dies.** (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULB)
     - "The wise person dies just like the fool dies."
     - "Wise people die just like fools die."

2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

   - **For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers, about the troubles we had in Asia.** (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
     - "For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia." (2 Corinthians 1:8)

3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

   - **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me."** (Matthew 16:24 ULB) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
     - "If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me."

Uses:

- Galatians 1:1
- Galatians 6:6-8